
Second Year Secondary
Second Term 2020
نحن نمـــد لك يد العون للنجاح والتفوق
Name : ______________________________
Group : __________

Unit 9: Where Today's Food Comes From

Vocabulary

fertile **x** infertile	خصب /غير خصب	ingredients	مكونات
genetically modified **(GM)**	**معدل وراثيا**	ripen	ينضج
organic	عضوى	rot	يتعفن
non-organic = inorganic	غير عضوى	rotten	متعفن
pesticide	مبيد الآفات الزراعية	seeds	بذور
spray	يرش	starvation	مجاعة / الموت جوعا
agriculture	الزراعة	starve	يموت جوعا
fertilizer	سماد	modify	يعدل
poisonous	سام	modified	مُعدل
chemicals	مواد كيماوية	genetics+ فعل مفرد	علم الوراثة
genes	جينات	carbohydrate	الكربوهيدرات
genetic	جينى / وراثى	fat	دهن
genetic engineering	هندسة وراثية	protein	بروتين
modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
crops	محاصيل	organic food	طعام عضوى
soil	تربة	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
improve	يحسن	invention	اختراع
disease resistant	مقاوم للمرض	taste	يكون له طعم
organic farming	الزراعة العضوية	destroy	يدمر / يتلف
method	طريقة	diet	نظام خاص للتغذية
substance	مادة	exercise	يمارس تمارين رياضية
insects	حشرات	cell	خلية
damage	يتلف / يضر / تلف / ضرر	living thing	كائن حى
quantity / amount	كمية	develop	يطور
quality	نوعية / جودة	development	تنمية / تطوير
stream	مجرى ماء / يسيل / يتدفق	decay	يتحلل / يتعفن
flood	يفيض / فيضان	hunter	صياد
natural **x** unnatural	طبيعى/غير طبيعى	nuts	الجوز
normal	عادى	collect	يجمع
suppose	يفترض	notice	يلاحظ
modern farming	الزراعة الحديثة	cultivation	الزراعة
contain	يحتوى على	irrigation	الرى
high yield	عالى الانتاج	laboratory	معمل
roots	جذور	restrictions	قيود
surprisingly	بصورة مذهلة	label	بطاقة أو ملصق صغير

hunt	يصطاد	regularly	بانتظام
stem	ساق الزهرة	energy	طاقة
remove	يزيل	butter	الزبد
remote	بعيد	fast food	وجبة سريعة
genetic modification **(GM)**	**تعديل وراثى**	consumption	الاستهلاك

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

resistant to	مقاوم لـ	depend on	يعتمد على
harmful to	ضار لـ	spray … with	يرش … باستخدام
go up / bring down	يرتفع / يقلل- يخفض	in favour of	مؤيد لـ
void of	خالى من	poisonous for	سام لـ
save ….. from	يوفر …. من	put genes into	يضع جينات فى
protect from	يحمى من	opinion on / about	رأى عن
provide … with	يزود …… بـ	eat … for breakfast	يأكل … فى الافطار
do / cause damage to	يسبب تلف لـ	get worse	يسوء
pass from ….. to	ينتقل من ….. الى	over time	بمرور الوقت
good for / bad for	مفيد لـ / ضار لـ	do exercise	يمارس تمارين رياضية
let people starve	يترك الناس جوعى	make modifications	يحدث تعديلات
put on soil	يضع فى التربة	bring a disease	يجلب مرض
be concerned with + noun	مهتم بـ	experiment on / with	يجري تجربة علي

General Words

cookie	كعكة صغيرة	poultry	دواجن
pickles	مخلل	hotchpotch	شوربة خضار
pepper	فلفل	sausages	سجق
garlic & onion	ثوم وبصل	beefsteak	شريحة لحم بقرى
noodles	مكرونة (شعرية)	minced meat	لحم مفروم
herring	رنجة	lamb / mutton	لحم ضأن
lobster	استاكوزا	stuffed pigeons	حمام محشو

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
poisonous	toxic	healthy
rot	decay	improve / reform
genetic	hereditary	acquired
fertile	fruitful / rich	barren / poor / infertile
harmful	damaging	safe / harmless

ripe	mature	raw
sufficient	enough	insufficient
regularly	frequently	irregularly
liquid	fluid	solid

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
modify	modification	modified
starve	starvation	starved
protect	protection	protective
rot	rot	rotten
ripen	ripeness	ripe
fertilize	fertilization	fertile
add	addition	additive
adverise	adverisement	adverised
improve	improvement	improvable

Spot The Difference

ripen	ripe
rot	rotten
insecticide	pesticide
regularly	gradually
traditional	modern
chemical	a chemical
quality	quantity
natural	normal
agriculture	cultivation
exercise	exercises
damage	destroy
starvation	famines
ingredients	components
energy	power
label	ticket
improve	prove
Like ……,	Unlike ……,
other	another
over time	overtime

Read the following carefully

Listening :

لاحظ جمل السؤال المذيل فى النص

Hassan : What was the radio programme about that you were listening to, Ali?

Ali : It was very interesting, Hassan. It was an interview with a farmer. He was talking about organic farming.

Hassan : What did he say?

Ali : He said that organic farming was the best way to farm.

Hassan : Really? I don't think it is. Why did he think that?

Ali : Well, he said that when he was learning about farming, his teacher told him that most fruit and vegetables were sprayed with pesticides. He explained that pesticides could be poisonous.

Hassan : I suppose so.

Ali : He also said that in the past, the Nile had flooded every year. He explained that this had left fertile soil on the fields, so farmers hadn't needed chemical fertilizers then. He said that the Nile doesn't flood the fields now, but there must be a better way to improve the soil than spraying the fields with chemicals.

Hassan : What is the answer, then?

Ali : He said that he wanted to improve the quality of the soil by adding natural, organic fertilizers.

Hassan : But surely it's much quicker and easier for farmers to spray their crops with chemical fertilizers and pesticides, ***isn't it?***

Ali : Yes, but he said that using organic fertilizers would be cheaper than using chemical fertilizers.

Hassan : What about the quantity of crops farmers get, though? Modern farming makes more money than organic farming***, doesn't it?*** What did he say about that?

Ali : He said that organic farms didn't produce the same quantities as modern farms, so they didn't make quite as much money. But he said that organic food is much better for you.

Hassan : I'm not so sure. Did he talk about genetically modified crops, too?

Ali : He asked the interviewer if he could talk about genetically modified crops, but the interviewer said that this was going to be the subject of the programme the following week.

Hassan : It'll be on next Tuesday***, won't it?***

Ali : Yes, it will. It's an interesting subject***, isn't it?***

Hassan : Yes, I'd like to listen to that.

Reading

Should our food be modified?

Thousands of years ago, most people were hunters whose food came from the animals and fish that they had killed and from nuts, roots and fruit that they had collected. Later, these hunters lived in one place and became farmers

whose **method** of getting food was to grow crops from the seeds of wild plants. Over time, they noticed that some plants were better than others. They saved the seeds from these plants and so the **quality** of their crops improved.

Like plants, all other living things contain genes which control what they will be like. Modern scientists can put genes into plants and animals in their laboratories, and this means that they can modify their genes in order to change what they are like. This is called **genetic engineering**.

A type of tomato is an example of this. When tomatoes **ripen**, one of their genes produces a chemical that makes the fruit **rot**. Scientists can modify this gene so that the tomatoes do not rot so quickly. This is one way in which genetically modified (**GM**) crops can improve agriculture. Scientists know that this technology can also protect people from **starvation** in countries where insects or diseases destroy crops. For example, fruit and vegetables have been modified so that they are not damaged by the diseases that kill other plants.

However, many people believe that modified food is unnatural and fear that genetic engineering may bring new diseases in the future. So should we eat genetically modified food or not? Surprisingly, biscuits, cakes and many other foods that we have been eating for years already contain genetically modified **ingredients**. Have they done us any harm?

Definitions

genetically modified	when scientists change the genetic structure of the crops to improve them in order to resist diseases.
fertilizers	something that farmers put on soil to help plants to grow.
organic	using farming methods that don't use (harmful) chemicals.
poisonous	containing something that can kill you if you eat or drink it.
pesticides	a chemical which is used to kill insects that damage crops.
spray	to make liquid come out of a container in as small drops
method	a way of doing something.
G. engineering	the work of changing the genetic structure of crops or animals.
ingredients	the things from which a type of food is made.
ripen	If crops ripen , they become ready to eat.
rot	to decay or to make something decay.
starvation	when someone is ill or dies as they don't have enough to eat.
quality	a high standard of something. / how good or bad something is.
gene	a part of a cell of a living thing which controls what it will be like.
agriculture	the work of growing crops and feeding animals.
regularly	Describes something that happens frequently.
amount	Quantity of something.
plenty of	A sufficient amount of.

Language Notes

- **soil**: تربة خصبة - These plants only grow in a muddy **soil**.
- **ground**: أرض (خارج المنزل) - Don't sit on the **ground**. You'll get wet.
- **floor**: دور / طابق / (المنزل) أرضية - He lives in a flat on the second **floor**.

- **feed (fed/ fed)**: يطعم - Don't forget to **feed** the dog.
- **eat (ate / eaten)**: يأكل - We usually **eat** at about 7 o'clock.

- **contain** يحتوى على (ما يوجد داخل شئ ما) - What does this box contain?
- **include** يشتمل على (جزء من كل ويمكن فصله) - The list includes your name.
- **consist of** يتكون من (كل الأجزاء) - What does this dish consist of?

- **taste (v.)**: يتذوق - **Taste** this and see if it's too salty.
- **taste (n.)**: حاسة الذوق / طعم / مَذاق / ذوق - That cake has a nice **taste**.
- **tasty (adj.)**: لذيذ المَذاق - They serve very **tasty** dishes here.
- **tasteful (adj.)**: حَسَنُ الذَّوْق - They bought **tasteful** furniture.

- **so + فعل مساعد + فاعل:** و كذلك (تستخدم فى الجمل المثبتة)
  - Noha speaks English **and so does Rania**.
- **and neither + فعل مساعد + فاعل:** و كذلك (تستخدم فى الجمل المنفية)
  - Ali can't swim **and neither can I**.

- **stop + مفعول + v. + ing:** يمنع ..... من
  - They have built a fence سور to **stop the dog getting** out.

- **by + v. + ing:** بواسطة
  - He lost weight **by taking** more exercise.

♦ **هناك adverbs تنتهي بـ ly تستخدم بدلا من very وتعطى معنى أقوي للجملة :**

Extremely – fantastically – tremendously – incredibly – unbelievably

- The mountain is extremely high. - He was incredibly rich.

♦ **لاحظ أن awfully / terribly تستخدم عادة بمعنى بشدة مع sorry :**

- I am awfully sorry for disturbing you.

- **make + object مفعول + مصدر :** **يجبر / يجعل**
  - The teacher **made us rewrite** the lesson.

- **فى حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم to قبل المصدر :**
  - We **were made to rewrite** the lesson.

- **One of + اسم جمع + فعل مفرد :** - **One** of these **books is** mine.
- **much + صفة مقارنة :** بمعنى بكثير - This car is much more expensive ..... .

✍ **I hope + فاعل + will + مصدر :** أتمنى - I hope I will be a doctor.
✍ **I hope / wish + to + مصدر :** أتمنى - I hope / wish to be a doctor.
✍ **I wish + مفعول + أسم :** أتمنى - I wish you success / good luck….
✍ **I wish + فاعل + فعل مرفوع درجة :** - I wish he were with us now.

✍ **Whose + اسم مملوك :** ضمير وصل يدل علي الملكية
- That is the boy **whose** sister is a teacher.
✍ **Who's = who is+n. / v + ing / adj. صفة / number / prep. :**
- Leila is the student **who's** working on this project with me.

Language Functions

Giving advice and instructions	
You should eat healthy food.	You shouldn't waste your time.
Make sure you eat lots of cheese and milk.	You had better give up smoking.
If I were you , I would go to the dentist.	You must not eat too many sweets.
Eat meat regularly. It has lots of protein.	You mustn't eat too much fat. It is bad for you.

✍ ***Choose the correct answer:***

1- Don't eat the fruit from that tree because it is ………………… .
a) healthy b) poisonous c) useful d) tasty
2- Farmers earn their money from …………………….. .
a) tourism b) fishing c) industry d) agriculture
3- Look at the planes. They are ……………………the fields from the air.
a) praying b) playing c) spraying d) staying
4- Some people believe that ……………………… fruit and vegetables are better for you than ones grown with chemical fertilizers.
a) dynamic b) organic c) mechanic d) genetically
5- Some people are worried that ……………. modified crops will bring diseases.
a) genetic b) genetically c) devised d) genetics
6- I get my brown hair and eyes from my parents - they're in my ………………
a) genes b) germs c) gems d) lungs
7- Fruit is ready to eat when it has been ……………. by the sun.
a) rotten b) ripened c) damaged d) fed
8- The main ………………. of the meal I am cooking is cheese.
a) element b) part c) component d) ingredient
9- Scientists can ………………. crops by adding or removing certain genes.
a) multiply b) modify c) intensify d) liquify
10- When fruit or other food ………………….., it is too bad to eat.
a) rots b) ripen c) rotten d) ripe

11- People who don't have enough food to eat may die of ……………..

a) communication b) starvation c) overpopulation d) accommodation

12- If you want to grow vegetables, you have to put …………. in the ground.

a) fertilizers b) insecticides c) pesticides d) seeds

13- ………………. modified crops offer opportunity to improve agriculture.

a) Genetic b) Genes c) Genetically d) Gene

14- Organic farming improves the ……………… of the soil.

a) duality b) quantity c) amount d) quality

15- When tomatoes are ………….. , they are bad to eat.

a) rotten b) rot c) ripe d) ripen

16- “Harmful” has two possible antonyms: “harmless” and …………………. .

a) dangerous b) honest c) safe d) damaging

17- The suffix …………….. turns the verb “protect” into an adjective.

a) -ion b) -ive c) -ment d) -al

18- The two adjectives “ripe” and “raw” are ……………………. .

a) similar b) derivatives c) synonyms d) antonyms

19- Rot to decay is like ripe to …………………. .

a) mature b) rot c) ripen d) raw

20- The word rot can be used as a noun an as a / an …………………. .

a) adverb b) adjective c) verb d) proverb

21- The earliest farmers saved the seeds ………………. their best plants.

a) of b) from c) with d) out

22- Many people believe that eating GM food may ………. diseases in the future.

a) bring b) prevent c) protect d) stop

23- Some people are ………………. favour of organic farming.

a) in b) at c) with d) by

24- ....…. should contain information about the ingredients in the food we buy.

a) Labels b) Tickets c) Cables d) Tables

25- When the power went off, all the food in the freezer ………………….. .

a) rotten b) rotted c) rotting d) rusted

26- Her choice of clothes is …….........……….…. .

a) tasty b) tasted c) tasteful d) taste

27- The peaches الخوخ need another day to ………………….. .

a) ripe b) ripen c) rip d) rap

28- To ………………. is to make small changes in something.

a) modify b) clarify c) intensify d) qualify

29- Old people are resistant ………………… change.

a) for b) from c) to d) over

30- Farmers use ……………………… on soil to help plants to grow.

a) fertilizers b) ingredients c) genes d) seeds

31- Farmers use chemical …………………….. to kill insects on crops.

a) herbicide b) pesticides c) herbivores d) carnivores

32- Years ago, the Nile used to ……………….. most farmers' fields every year.

a) flow b) pour c) spill d) flood

33- He made her …………………. the report four times.

a) to write b) write c) writing d) writes

34- Our ……………………. should be decreased for the good of our country.

a) production b) consumption c) deduction d) construction

35- My brother wants to study ………………….. at university.

a) gene b) genetic c) genetics d) geneticists

36- ……………….. fruit usually tastes sweet.

a) Ripened b) Rotten c) Raw d) Medium

37- Scientists have made genetic ………………….. to some vegetables.

a) qualifications b) modifications c) classifications d) clarifications

38- Many people were very hungry after the storm. Some even began to ……..

a) feed b) serve c) starve d) observe

39- Fertile ………………….. produces plenty of good crops.

a) ground b) soil c) earth d) floor

40- Organic farmers do not use chemicals that are harmful ……. the environment.

a) with b) for c) at d) to

41- Fruits and vegetables are sprayed .... pesticides to kill harmful insects.

a) with b) by c) from d) of

42- We should ……… the quality of the soil by adding natural organic fertilizers.

a) improve b) contribute c) distribute d) prove

43- ……………. engineering can be used to protect people from starvation.

a) Genetics b) Genetically c) Genes d) Genetic

44- A lot of tourists admire the ……………….. dishes in Egyptian restaurants.

a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasting d) testing

45- I only did it because I was made ……………… it.

a) do b) doing c) to do d) did

46- Noha plays music and …………………………… .

a) so does Azza b) Azza does so c) neither does Azza d) Azza doesn't either

47- Farmers use fertilizers to make their land ………………… .

a) barren b) fertile c) infertile d) poor

48- He passed the test and ……………….. did his brother.

a) so b) either c) neither d) nor

49- I wish the weather ……………….. better yesterday.

a) was b) were c) is d) had been

50- I'm ………………… sorry for not coming on time.

a) incredibly b) unbelievably c) fantastically d) awfully

51- ……..……… I've found somewhere to live, I'll send you my address.
a) Once b) One c) Ones d) Twice

52- Every night before going to bed, I …………… my mother good night.
a) hope b) wish c) give d) offer

53- My brother trained hard for the competition and I . ………….. he'll win.
a) hope b) wish c) give d) intend

54- I ……………… we could meet next week.
a) insist b) hope c) wish d) intend

55- I wish you ………………. try listening to me for once.
a) can b) will c) may d) would

56- We can improve the ………..… of the soil by adding natural organic fertilizers.
a) duality b) quality c) amount d) quantity

57- Scientists have made ………………. modification to some vegetables.
a) genetic b) genetically c) genes d) gene

58- ……………… is a thing which farmers put on soil to help plants to grow.
a) Pesticide b) Insecticide c) Fertilizer d) Fruit

59- ……………… plants, all other living things contain genes.
a) Likely b) Like c) Unlike d) Unlikely

60- Using chemicals is very harmful ……………. the environment.
a) to b) for c) at d) on

61- Tom bought a new car. So ……………….. .
a) did I b) I did c) do I d) I do

62- Mr Sun ………… a friend of mine works in a big company.
a) who b) whose c) which d) who's

63- This plan is a failure so we have to …………………… it.
a) identify b) classify c) modify d) clarify

64- My brother ………… friend is a Libyan engineer is going to work in Tripoli.
a) who b) who is c) who's d) whose

65- The doctor ……………….. done the operation is very clever.
a) who b) whom c) who's d) whose

66- I'm really enjoying this dessert. Can you tell me what the ………… are?
a) ingredients b) goods c) crops d) foods

67- If you need more ……………, eat more meat, fish and eggs.
a) sugar b) fat c) protein d) carbohydrate

68- ……………… is the work of growing crops and feeding animals.
a) Culture b) Agriculture c) Literature d) Structure

69- Normal tomatoes …………………. faster than GM tomatoes.
a) rotten b) rotting c) rot d) root

70- GM crops can protect people from…………………… in poor countries.
a) communication b) starvation c) overpopulation d) accommodation

Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

♣ يستخدم الكلام المباشر لنقل ما قاله المتحدث كما هو دون اى تغيير أما الكلام غير المباشر فيستخدم لنقل كلام المتحدث دون نقل كلماته الفعلية و هناك اختلافات بين الحاتين تظهر فى فعل القول و الرابط و الضمائر و الازمنة و الظروف الزمنية:

• Tamer said, "I want to stop smoking." (his actual words)
Tamer told me that he wanted to stop smoking. (reported speech)

1) Statement الجملة الخبرية

1- يختلف فعل القول فى المباشر وغير المباشر كالتالى :

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

2- فى المباشر يوجد inverted commas أما فى غير المباشر يمكن استخدام that.

3- فى المباشر الازمنة حقيقية كما هى فى الكلام العادى أما فى غير المباشر فالزمن يتحرك نحو الماضى درجة أى تتغير الأزمنة من مضارع إلى ماضي و من ماضي إلى ماضي تام كما يلي :

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
write / writes	wrote	will	would
wrote	had written	shall	would
is / are writing	was / were writing	may	might
have / has written	had written	can	could
has / have been writing	had been writing	must الزام	had to
was / were writing	had been writing	must استنتاج	must have+pp

4- هناك كلمات معينة تتغير في غير المباشر كما يلي :

Direct	Indirect
now	then
yesterday	the day before / the previous day
last week	the week before / the previous week
ago	before / earlier
yet	by then / yet
tomorrow	the next day
next Friday	the following Friday
tonight	that night
tomorrow morning	the next morning

next week	the following week
this	that
here	There
today	that day
these	those
this afternoon	that afternoon

- وجميع علامات ازمنة المضارع تعتبر دلالات لنفس الزمن فى الماضى طالما جاءت فى الغير مباشر.
- أى فعل معناه انتهى فى الماضى سواء مثبت او منفى نضعه فى الماضى التام.

5- **لاحظ أننا نختار الضمائر (حسب المعنى):**

♦ She said, "I shall pay my debts tomorrow."
She said **she** would pay **her** debts the next day.

♣ **المشكلة التي تواجه الكثير من الطلاب عند حل جملة مباشر وغير مباشر ان الجملة تاتي في الامتحان في سؤال choose بمعني ان الجملة تكون محولة أصلاً الي الغير مباشر ومطلوب من الطالب تحديد الاختيار الصحيح والذي قد يكون الزمن او فعل القول أو غيرهما وهذا يُحدث ارتباك عند بعض الطلاب وكمحاولة لحل هذه المشكلة نستعرض مثال للتوضيح:**

Ex : Sara told Sameh that she (will go – went – would go – is going) to Aswan the following week

في الجملة السابقة قمنا باختيار would go لان الجملة محولة للغير مباشر بوجود فعل القول told والرابط that والمطلوب هو تحديد الزمن الصحيح بالطبع سنقوم باستبعاد اي زمن مضارع ووجود the following week التي كانت في المباشر next week فبالتالي يكون الزمن مستقبل محول في الغير مباشر الي would + inf

♣ **يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من said:**

explained / promised / claimed ادعى / complained / mentioned / indicated أوضح / asserted أكد / agreed / reported / showed

♦ He said, "The service in this restaurant is not good."
He **complained** that the service in that restaurant was not good.

♦ He said, "I won't tell anyone what you said."
He **agreed** he wouldn't tell anyone what I had said.

ولكن متى لا نرفع الزمن درجة :

1- **الأفعال الآتية لا تتغير في غير المباشر :**

Would / should / ought to / had better / might / used to / could

♦ He said, "I **used to** clean my room every day."

♦ He said he **used to** clean his room every day.

2- **لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل say(s) في المضارع :**

♦ She says, "I live in a small flat in Cairo."

She ***says* she lives** in a small flat in Cairo.

3- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة :

- ♦ She said, "Metals expand when they are heated".
  She **said that** metals expand when they are heated.

4- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة :

- ♦ He said just now, "I have already seen the film."
  He said just now **he has** already seen the film.

5- في حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط :

- ♦ He said, "If it rains, I'll stay at home."
  He said **if** it **rained**, **he would** stay at home.

6- اذا جاءت must في جملة تعبر عن حقيقة أو عرف سائد أو نصيحة فلا تتغير :

- ♦ He said to me, "You must obey your parents."
  He told me that I must obey my parents.

♣ **في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم and that أو and added that :**

- ♦ He said to me, "I didn't post the letter. I'll ask John to post it for me."
  He **told** me he **hadn't posted** the letter **and that** he **would** ask John to post it for **him**.

♣ **يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من said to عند كغير مباشر ويأتي بعدها v+ing :**

suggested / admited / denied / apologized for /
thank ….. for / objected to / insisted on + (v-ing)

- ♦ He said, "Let's watch the news on TV." = He **suggested watching** the news.

- **يمكن استخدام deny / admit مثل said ولكن بعدهما جملة مثبتة :**

- ♦ He **denied seeing** the accident.
  = He **denied that he had seen** the accident.

♣ **يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من said to كغير المباشر ويأتي بعدها to + inf. :**

Promised / offered / agreed / threatened / advised /
refused / reminded / decided / ordered + (to + inf.)

- ♦ He said, " I'll lend you the money you need."
  He **promised to** lend me the money I needed.
  He **promised that** he **would** lend me the money I needed.

✍ *Choose the correct answer :*

1- He ………….. he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework.
a) said **b) asked** **c) told** **d) say**

2- She said that she ……………….. to be a writer.
a) want **b) wants** **c) wanted** **d) is wanting**

3- She said that her mother ………………… her with her homework then.
a) help **b) helped** **c) was helping** **d) helping**

4- She said they …………………….. their fiends the following Saturday.
a) meet **b) would meet** **c) are meeting** **d) met**

5- She …………………….. that she had waited for more than an hour .

a) told b) wondered c) complained d) ordered

6- They promised that they ……..…………… us as soon as they arrived.

a) phone b) would phone c) will phone d) had phoned

7- He admitted that he ……………………. late the night before.

a) arrives b) has arrived c) had arrived d) would arrive

8- She said …………. she was hoping to come and see us the following week.

a) that b) if c) what d) where

9- I told the professor that I ……………………. the following lecture.

a) didn't attend b) wouldn't attend c) won't attend d) hadn't attended

10- Monira has just told Amira that they …….…… to their friend's wedding tonight.

a) would go b) have gone c) were going d) are going

11- I admitted that I ……………………. any plans.

a) don't have b) am not having c) didn't have d) doesn't have

12- He denied ……………………. at the scene of the crime.

a) to be b) had been c) was d) being

13- I explained that I …………………….. ask my mother.

a) would have to b) will have to c) will d) shall

14- He said that he ……………. her playing the piano in the following party.

a) had seen b) has seen c) will see d) would see

15- The teacher ………………… that today's lesson is about farming.

a) says b) said c) tell d) told

16- Mona said that she ……………….. to the park the Thursday before.

a) is b) has been c) had been d) is going

17- Ola told the class that she ………………. give a talk about meat on that day.

a) will b) had c) may d) would

18- My uncle said that many people in India …….………… English.

a) speak b) spoke c) will speak d) are speaking

19- Peter ………….……. he would phone me that evening.

a) asked b) told c) promised d) wanted

20- She said, "I …………………. anyone until I have finished."

a) didn't see b) won't see c) wasn't seen d) hadn't seen

21- She refused ………………… me the money I needed.

a) lending b) lend c) to lend d) to lending

22- He ordered her …………………….. making noise.

a) to stop b) stop c) not stop d) stopping

23- He said just now that he ……………………. a new car next month.

a) would buy b) will buy c) had bought d) buys

24- He ………………. Dina that he was writing a letter.

a) said b) told c) asked d) talked

25- Samar ………………. that the helicopter was flying high.

a) told b) said to c) asked d) said

26- Leila said that she ………………… the TV serial by then.

a) isn't watching b) didn't watch c) wasn't watching d) hadn't watched

27- Jenna said they ……………… to Dubai the next year.

a) were going b) have been going c) is going d) went

28- "I'm going out," announced Bassam. Bassam announced he …………….. out.

a) went b) has gone c) was going d) is going

29- Gamal said that he would see Hany ……………………………… .

a) yesterday b) the following day c) reagain d) today

30- Selim reported that Sawsan …………………. even consider it.

a) will b) wouldn't c) isn't d) doesn't

31- The teacher …………………. that today's lesson was about farming.

a) told b) said c) said to d) say

32- Mona said that she …………………. been to the park the Thursday before.

a) had b) has c) had had d) have

33- Tarek told us that he …….……….. come to the meeting the previous evening.

a) hasn't b) can't c) hadn't d) wasn't

34- My uncle explained that many people in India …………………. English.

a) spoke b) spoken c) speaks d) speak

35- Karim said that he will buy organic food from the supermarket ………. evening.

a) the b) that c) this d) these

36- Ola told the class that she would give a talk about meat …………………..

a) this day b) today c) that day d) the day

37- She explained that many farmers give …. animals vitamins to help them grow.

a) his b) her c) their d) they

38- Experts said that milk may contain some bacteria which ………. make you ill.

a) could b) can c) had d) can't

39- He noticed that the expiry date on that milk …………………. June 30.

a) was b) is c) be d) has been

40- He said that he wanted to help us do well in …………………. exams.

a) his b) her c) their d) our

41- He said that ………. was going to be the subject of the program the next week.

a) that b) this c) these d) those

42- Mona ……. that there were a lot of small farms near her grandparents' house.

a) says b) told c) tells d) said

43- Warda ……………… me that she was going to have a sandwich for lunch.

a) says b) told c) tells d) said

44- Zeinab said that she …………………. never been to a farm.

a) had b) has c) have d) has had

45- They said that they had visited a farm …………………. .

a) last year b) the year after c) the next year d) the year before

46- Zeinab said that she wanted to visit a farm …………………. .

a) last year b) the year after c) next year d) the year before

47- Mum …….. she would take Mona with her when she visited my grandparents.

a) told b) promised c) claims d) says

48- He denied …………………. the cheque so as not go to prison.

a) forging b) forged c) to forge d) had forged

49- He said metals …………………. when they are cooled.

a) contract b) contracts c) contracted d) contracting

50- He advised me …………………. for another job to improve my income.

a) looking b) to look c) look d) looked

51- She told me to …………………. the computer after finishing.

a) have close b) closing c) closes d) close

52- She promised that she …………………. help me soon.

a) can b) will c) would d) may

53- He admitted that he …………………. the house the night before.

a) robbing b) to rob c) robbed d) had robbed

54- The science teacher says water …………………. if boiled.

a) evaporated b) evaporate c) evaporates d) is evaporate

55- He explained that he had lost his way in the desert a few weeks ……………. .

a) earlier b) ago c) after d) yet

56- She said they had met them there the ………………. Saturday.

a) next b) following c) previous d) coming

57- Sally told me …………………. she couldn't speak French.

a) if b) that c) whether d) what

58- The coach said if it …………………., they wouldn't play the match.

a) rained b) had rained c) rains d) rain

59- Ahmed …………………. me that he had an operation.

a) said b) told c) says d) tells

60- He told me he …………………. a new story then.

a) was reading b) had read c) reads d) has read

Exercises On Unit 9

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It must be said that most of those who are against Genetically Modified (GM) foods are neither living in countries which suffer from food shortages, nor facing starvation. Many scientists believe that without GM foods, the Third World will never overcome its food problems. At present, over one billion people live on less than one dollar a day. The United Nations hopes this number will be cut in

half, within fifteen years. This will not happen if food is produced in the conventional manner. Foods produced by traditional farming methods do not last very long and often spoil during transport. Very often, food sent by the West to countries suffering from famine, rots before ***it*** reaches its destination. Now, scientists have found ways to preserve foods for much longer time. For example, they have developed a preservative made from vitamins and minerals which keeps even cut fresh fruit for up ten days if refrigerated. Despite this, there are still people who believe agricultural research should be moving in a different direction. They accept that there is no real proof that GM foods are dangerous. However, they believe that the solutions that GM foods provide are short-term and that it is necessary to find longer and natural means to solve the world's food problems.

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- The expression "cut in half" means ………………… .

a) cut into pieces b) add one half c) decrease by half d) become one and a half

2- What does the underlined word "*it*" refer to?

a) the countries b) the food c) the famine d) the West

3- People are ………………… .

a) not sure GM foods are dangerous. b) sure GM foods are safe.
c) sure GM foods are dangerous. d) ignorant of GM foods.

4- ………………. is a word in the passage which means unnormal.

a) conventional b) natural c) GM d) traditional

B) Give short answers to the following questions:

5- How do scientists preserve foods for a long time?

6- Mention one disadvantage of food grown by conventional methods.

7- Do you think that the fruit and vegetables we eat are genetically modified?

8- Do you agree with the scientists who believe that without GM foods, the Third World will never overcome its food problem? Why?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are you likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them question like that, either say, “There won’t be any left”, or “Whatever it is, there won’t be much taste in it.” Of course there are many reasons for being **pessimistic** about the world’s food supply in the future. Nevertheless, not all experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world’s population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is, therefore, argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is food shortage, but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those who need it.

Moreover, in most industrialized countries, one important cause f the trouble if our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are already in situation where

we feed animals with grain to produce high quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like Soya beans. However skeptical we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by **these** means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such steak is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!!

A. Choose the correct answer:

1- The underlined word 'pessimistic' in the first paragraph means …………. .

a) caring b) uncaring c) hopeful d) hopeless

2- The underlined word 'these' in the last paragraph refers to ……………. .

a) steaks b) vegetable ingredients

c) scientists d) substance, taste and colour of meat

3- The production of more food depends on ………………. .

a) feeding animals with grains b) general despondency

c) improving cultivation methods d) high quality beef

4- The best title for this passage is ………………. .

a) Food for future generations b) Industrialized countries

c) Developing countries d) The human population

B. Answer the following questions:

5- What are the main reasons for food shortage at the present time?

6- Is our diet going to be the same or different in the future?

7- Who can solve the problem of our preference for meat?

8- State two ways, of your own, to solve the problem of food shortage.

3- Write an essay of about 180 words on one of the following:

1- Genetic engineering. 2- Healthy food leads to healthy body.

4- A) Translate into Arabic:

1- Teaching English is no longer helping students to study a lot of vocabulary by heart. But we now teach English through situations. These situations help students to practise the language by using it in their daily life.

2- Food is essential for all living beings. Without food, man can't live long; his health will fail and he will fall ill. So, every man has to eat enough food to live.

B) Translate into English:

1- إن اتباع نظام غذائى غنى بالخضار والفواكه يمكن أن يخفض مستوى ضغط الدم ويقلل من خطر الإصابة بكثير من الأمراض التى قد تصيبنا بسهولة اذا لم نكن أصحاء.

2- عندما تكون مستمعاً جيداً فهذا يساعدك ليس فقط على معالجة العديد من المشاكل بل كذلك على النظر الى العالم من خلال عيون الآخرين وعندها ستكون رؤية صحيحة لما يدور حولك.

Unit 10: Moby Dick

Vocabulary

ashore	الى الشاطئ	crew	طاقم طائرة / سفينة
primitive **x** civilized	بدائى / متحضر	determined	مصمم / عازم
ahead	أمام	harpoon	رمح خاص لصيد الحيتان
above	فوق	purpose	غرض
aboard	على متن طائرة / سفينة	ram (rammed)	يصطدم بشدة بـ
abroad	الخارج	whenever	فى أى وقت
remote	بعيد / نائى	recommend	يوصى بـ
remoteness	بعد	destroy	يدمر
serious	جاد / خطير	destruction	دمار
seriousness	جدية / خطورة	ambition	الطموح
whaling	صيد الحيتان	ambitious	طموح
armed	مسلح	dangers	أخطار
continent	قارة	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
row	يجدف	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة
scene	مشهد	funny	مرح
development	تطور / نمو / تنمية	remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
import	يستورد	conference	مؤتمر
adventure (n)	مغامرة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
whale	حوت	essay	مقالة
whaling ship	سفينة لصيد الحيتان	weapons	أسلحة
navy ship	سفينة تابعة للبحرية	spear	رمح
islanders	سكان الجزر	incredible	لا يصدق
be disappointed	يشعر بخيبة الأمل	enemy	عدو
collection	مجموعة	survive	يظل حيا (بعد كارثة)
sail	يبحر	character	شخصية
sailor	بحار	message	رسالة
hunter	قناص / صياد	rescue = save	ينقذ
blubber	شحم الحوت	get revenge	يثأر / ينتقم
candles	شموع	consequences	نتائج
oil	زيت	actions	أفعال
fat	شحم / دهن	alternative routes	طرق بديلة
extinct	ينقرض	excitement	اثارة
extinction	انقراض	review	عرض نقدى لكتاب / فيلم
details	تفاصيل	reviewer	ناقد أدبى
multimedia	وسائط متعددة	sandcastle	قلعة رمال

vacuum cleaner	مكنسة	fortress	حصن
stubborn	عنيد	the wounded	الجرحى
marine life	الحياة البحرية	ecology	علم البيئة
criticize	ينتقد	ecologists	خبراء البيئة
cargo shipping	شحن البضائع بحريا	recommendations	توصيات

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

work on a ship	يعمل على سفينة	hunt for	يصطاد من أجل
live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة	on his voyage	فى رحلته البحرية
armed with	مسلح بـ	fall to his death	يسقط ميتا
come out	يصدر (كتب / صحف)	life at sea	الحياة فى البحر
at first	أولا	on the third day	فى اليوم الثالث
at the beginning	فى البداية	hold onto	يتشبث بـ
born into a ... family	يولد فى أسرة ...	essential to	ضرورى لـ
work on farms	يعمل فى المزارع	crash into	يصطدم بـ
be bored with	يشعر بالملل من	win his fight with	يكسب معركته مع
look for	يبحث عن	at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع
work on a novel	يعمل فى تأليف رواية	by accident	بالصدفة
at the time of	فى وقت	pull out	يسحب
lend someone a hand	يساعد شخص	do … with balance	يفعل شئ بتوازن
by the age of …	بحلول عمر ...	in revenge for	انتقاما لـ
play a vital role in	يلعب دورا حيويا فى	work in ordinary jobs	يعمل فى وظائف عادية

General Words

contamination	التلوث	nuclear reactor	مفاعل نووى
soil pollution	تلوث التربة	nuclear waste	نفايات نووية
soil erosion	تآكل التربة (التعرية)	extermination	إبادة
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	turbulance	اضطراب
reforestation	زراعة الغابات	violation	انتهاك (مخالفة)
desertification	التصحر	excutive authority	سلطة تنفيذية
deterioration	تدهور	weather conditions	الظروف الجوية
imminent danger	خطر وشيك	preventive measures	إجراءات وقائية

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
remote	far / distant	near
primitive	simple	modern

serious	strict	funny
enemy	foe / enemy	friend
popular	common / beloved	unpopular
several	many	few
attack	fight	defend
ambitious	hopeful / greedy	satisfied
sink	submerge	float

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
determine	determination	determined
disappoint	disappointment	disappointed
excite	excitement	exciting
destroy	destruction	destructive
balance	balance	balanced
predict	prediction	predictive
survive	survival	survived
popularise	popularity	popular
activate	activity	active

Spot The Difference

sink	drown
catch	hunt
gold	golden
active	activist
determined	determing
popularity	popularisation
attack	attract
offer	give
abroad	aboard
navy	marine
harpoon	arrow
ahead	a head
destroy	hurt
crew	staff
scene	seen
The injured	The wounded

Read the following carefully

Listening :

When his novel, Moby Dick, came out in 1851, Herman Melville had been writing for five years. He had already written two books called Typee and Omoo, and was popular in Britain and America. Today, Moby Dick is his most famous novel but at first people didn't like it. But let's start at the beginning and look at what Herman Melville had done before he wrote his greatest work. Melville was born into a good New York family in 1819. His father, who imported goods from France, died when Herman was twelve. After he had left school, the young boy worked in very ordinary jobs in offices and on farms.

By the age of twenty, Herman was bored with the jobs he had been doing and decided to look for adventure, so, in 1839, he went to sea – first on a whaling ship, and later on a navy ship. During one of his voyages he went ashore on the Maquesas Islands and lived for a few months with the primitive Typee people.

In his mid-twenties, Melville returned to live with his mother and write about his adventures. Tom, the hero of his novel Typee, spends four exciting months with a group of island people. His second novel, Omoo, was about Melville's life on islands in the Pacific Ocean. People loved reading about the unusual life Melville had been living in these strange, remote places, and so both these novels were very successful. In 1847, Melville married Elizabeth Shaw and they bought a farm.

Here, Melville worked for eight hours a day on his third novel, Moby Dick, which came out in 1851. This was a serious book and many of his readers were disappointed because it was not the exciting adventure story his first two novels had been. Melville continued to write short stories and a collection of poems, but wrote nothing important except a story called Billy Budd. Melville had not finished this final novel about life at sea at the time of his death in 1891.

Reading :

Moby Dick

Ishmael, the novel's storyteller, went to sea on a whaling ship called the Perquod. The ship's captain, Ahab, had lost a leg when his ship was **attacked** by a great white whale called Moby Dick on his last voyage. Ahab told his men that the **purpose** of their voyage was to hunt and kill Moby Dick and he offered a gold coin to the first sailor who saw him.

The Perquod sailed round the **continent** of Africa into the Indian Ocean. Whenever they met other ships which had been whaling in the area, Ahab asked their captains if they had seen Moby Dick. A sailor from one of these ships predicted that anyone who tried to kill Moby Dick would die. After this, there were many accidents on the Perquod, but nothing stopped Ahab. He was determined to kill the whale which he thought of as his **enemy**.

Suddenly, a storm hit the Perquod and one of the sailors fell to his death from

the ship. Soon after this, they saw Moby Dick and Ahab sent out men **armed** with **harpoons** in a small boat, but the whale destroyed the boat. The next day, more boats were sent out and, although a harpoon hit the whale, Moby Dick was strong enough to attack the Perquod. On the third day, boats were sent out again and this time the whale rammed and sank the ship. Captain Ahab was pulled out on a harpoon rope and died attached to the whale. The boat sank and all the **crew drowned** except Ishmael, who held onto some floating wood. He was rescued by another whaling ship and lived to tell the story.

Definitions

crew	the people who are working together on a ship or a plane.		
determined	want to do something so strongly and don't let anyone stop you.		
harpoon	a sharp metal / weapon like a spear used for hunting whales.		
purpose	what you want to achieve when you do something.		
navy	The people and ships that a country has to protect it		
ashore	onto land by the side of a lake , river , sea or ocean.		
enemy	Someone who doesn't like you and wants to hurt you		
serious	a serious problem, situation etc which is bad or worrying.		
continent	one of the main areas of land in the world such as Africa, Asia		
attack	to use violence against someone or a place		
around	moving in the shape of a circle		
remote	far away from other places		
whaling	the activity of hunting whales	**above**	in a higher position.
aboard	on or onto a ship or train.	**armed**	carrying weapons.
abroad	in or to a foreign country.	**drown**	to die under water
primitive	very simple or old fashioned	**ahead**	in front

Language Notes

- **shore**: شاطئ (أسم)
  - In bad weather, a lifeboat قارب النجاة is ready to set out from the **shore**.
- **ashore**: on shore إلى الشاطئ (ظرف)
  - The passengers went **ashore** for an hour while the ship was in port.
- **coast** ساحل (تستخدم عند الإشارة إلى موقع بالنسبة للخريطة)
  - The ship sank three miles off the French **coast**.
  - There is rain over the whole of the west **coast** of Britain.
- **beach** البلاج (جزء من الشاطئ يستمتع فيه الناس بقضاء الإجازة)
  - We spent a very nice time on the **beach**.
- **bank** ضفة النهر أو البحيرة - Most Egyptians live on the Nile banks.

✍ • **advise (someone) to / not to + مصدر** **ينصح**

- My father **advised** me to study hard. - My doctor **advised** me not to smoke.

• **recommend (someone) to + مصدر / n. / for + اسم:_ ينصح / يوصى بـــ / يرشح**

- He **recommended (advised) me to buy** one of these radios.
- He **recommended** me **a good book** to read.
- My uncle **recommended** me for a job in the bank.

• **recommend + V + ing / noun**: **يوصى بـــ / يرشح**

- I **recommend spending** the weekend in Luxor.

✍ • **Whenever** = every time or any time **حينما / عندما**

Whenever she comes, she brings us some presents.

• **Whoever** = the person who or any person **اى شخص/ أيا كان**

Whoever pollutes the environment should be punished.

• **Wherever** = to any place or every place **أينما / حيثما**

Wherever he goes, he makes friends.

• **Whatever** = anything or everything **اى شيء**

You can eat **whatever** you like.

• **try + to + مصدر :** **يحاول عمل شئ و غالبا لا ينجح**

- He **tried to climb** the tree but he couldn't. = He failed to climb the tree..

• **try + v. + ing :** **يحاول عمل شئ و غالبا ينجح / يقوم بعمل شئ ليرى نتيجته**

- He **tried climbing** the tree and he did it. = He succeeded in climbing the tree.
- A: I have a bad headache. B: **Try taking** an aspirin.

• **be determined to**: **يكون مصمما على / يكون عازما على**

- He **was determined to** travel abroad.

• **think about (of) + v. + ing**: **يفكر فى**

- I'm **thinking about buying** a new mobile.

• **avoid + v. + ing**: **يتجنب / يتحاشى**

- It's better to **avoid traveling** during the rush-hour.

- **Both + اسم جمع :** تشير الى اثنين - **Both** my **parents are** doctors.
- **All + اسم جمع :** تشير الى أكثر من اثنين - **All** my **friends are** clever.

- **enough + اسم :** - I don’t have **enough money** to buy such a car.
- **صفة + enough :** - I’m not rich **enough** to buy such a car.

- **تأتى صفة التفضيل بدون the بعد صفات الملكية:** my best friend.

Language Functions

Making recommendations عمل توصيات

Making Recommendation	Reasons
I'm sure you'd enjoy/love (this book).	It's a very exciting/interesting (story).
You really should (read this book).	The characters are so real.
I can really recommend (this book) to you.	You won't be able to put it down.

Asking for information طلب معلومات

- What's the name of the book you are reading and who wrote it?
- Why do you recommend this book to me?
- Are you enjoying your book?

Choose the correct answer:

1- The word "hopeful" is similar in meaning to the word ………………… .
a) ambitious b) satisfied c) hopeless d) pessemistic

2- The antonym of the word "enemy" is ………………. .
a) foe b) rival c) friend d) opponent

3- The suffix ………………. turns the verb "determine" into noun.
a) -ed b) -ive c) -ment d) -ation

4- The police are still …………….. the murderer. I think they'll arrest him soon.
a) catching b) arresting c) hunting d) destroying

5- The words "primitive" and "modern" have ………………… meanings.
a) similar b) different c) the same d) identical

6- Ahab was the captain of the Perquod, which was a …………………. ship.
a) farming b) whaling c) collecting d) producing

7- Siwa is in a ………… part of the country, about 750 kilometres west of Cairo.
a) remote b) close c) isolate d) separate

8- As soon as their ship arrived in the port, all the passengers went ………………. .
a) shore b) ashore c) board d) broad

9- My grandfather was in the……………. and visited many different countries.
a) prison b) studio c) gang d) navy

10- The cave painting was painted by …………….. people thousands of years ago.
a) aggressive b) primitive c) civilized d) advanced

11- In the storm, the boat sank and two people …………………… .
a) drawn b) drowned c) frowned d) crowned

12- The sailors left their ship and ……………… ashore in a small boat.
a) found b) had c) went d) saw

13- The elephant ……………….. the hunters and completely destroyed their car.
a) attacked b) attracted c) attached d) attended

14- They ……… the lion for three days and finally caught it while it was sleeping.

a) held b) hunted c) chanted d) granted

15- Ahab ……………… a gold coin to the first sailor to see Moby Dick.

a) took b) borrowed c) hired d) offered

16- As soon as one of the men saw the whale, Ahab ……………… him the coin.

a) took b) gave c) borrowed d) caught

17- ………………….. is the activity of hunting whales.

a) Sailing b) Fishing c) Whaling d) Swimming

18- I don't really like funny films or books. I prefer …………………ones.

a) serious b) ambitious c) careless d) servant

19- ………………… is a weapon like a spear used for hunting whales.

a) Carbon b) Gun c) Arrow d) Harpoon

20- A storm hit the ship and one of the sailors fell to his ………….. from the ship.

a) life b) death c) dead d) living

21- People need to be …………………… to achieve their goals in life.

a) determined b) serious c) sure d) primitive

22- Whale meat is still ………………….. in some countries like Japan.

a) popular b) easy c) simple d) good

23- Experts believe that whales play a vital ………… in the ecology of marine life.

a) rule b) roll c) reel d) role

24- His father ……………………. goods from France.

a) sold b) exported c) imported d) gave

25- Melville worked for eight hours a day …………..………his third novel.

a) at b) on c) with d) of

26- Three ………………… men broke into the bank to rob it.

a) harmed b) armed c) alarmed d) farmed

27- We spent two months ……………………. the ship.

a) aboard b) abroad c) board d) broad

28- Turn left at the traffic lights, and you'll see the hospital straight …………….. .

a) ahead b) shed c) a head d) head

29- …… we need anything, she can always recommend the right person to go to.

a) Whatever b) Whenever c) Wherever d) Whoever

30- All his dreams and ……………………… came true.

a) promotion b) protection c) ambitions d) ambiguity

31- Someone I know .... this shop as a good place to buy clothes.

a) recommends b) builds c) admires d) wishes

32- I try to avoid …………………… shopping on Saturdays.

a) go b) to go c) to going d) going

33- He was getting bored ………………… doing the same thing every day.

a) at b) by c) with d) over

34- Melville was ………………… into a good New York family in 1819.

a) bear　　b) born　　c) borne　　d) bore

35- When he had left school, he worked ………………. farms.

a) in　　b) with　　c) by　　d) on

36- Lions always hunt ………………..….. food.

a) for　　b) from　　c) by　　d) with

37- Asia and Africa are the two biggest ………………….... .

a) countries　　b) continents　　c) cities　　d) towns

38- I tried ………………. him but he had already left.

a) to stop　　b) stopping　　c) stopped　　d) to stopping

39- I'm ……………….. about buying a new car.

a) seeing　　b) considering　　c) looking　　d) thinking

40- He was a young ………………… on his first sea voyage.

a) pilot　　b) sailor　　c) soldier　　d) swimmer

41- When will their new album come ……………………?

a) out　　b) over　　c) up　　d) round

42- Most of the old part of the city was ………………… by bombs during the war.

a) hurt　　b) injured　　c) flooded　　d) destroyed

43- They live ………………… the large Japanese island of Hokkaido.

a) in　　b) at　　c) of　　d) on

44- The ship had a very big ………… of sailors, engineers, scientists and cooks.

a) population　　b) crew　　c) group　　d) staff

45- Europe and Asia are two ………………….. which lie next to each other.

a) continents　　b) places　　c) islands　　d) areas

46- ………………….... she reads too much, she gets headaches.

a) Wherever　　b) While　　c) Upon　　d) Whenever

47- I wouldn't recommend …………………. at the hotel. The service is very bad.

a) to stay　　b) staying　　c) to staying　　d) stayed

48- I always go to the sea ………………..…. I have the chance.

a) after　　b) upon　　c) while　　d) whenever

49- Plays, films and concerts are ……….………….. in the papers.

a) reviewed　　b) revised　　c) reversed　　d) returned

50- He travelled ……………….. on business trip.

a) above　　b) ahead　　c) abroad　　d) broad

51- Animals can ………………... earthquakes before humans.

a) detect　　b) predict　　c) protect　　d) prevent

52- One of the sailors …………………. to his death from the ship.

a) felt b) fill c) fell d) full

53- He lives in a ………………… village. It's far from the nearest town.

a) remote b) alone c) lonely d) next

54- ………………… is the people that work together on a ship.

a) Screw b) crow c) crown d) crew

55- In the storm, the boat sank and two people …………………… .

a) sank b) drowned c) drawned d) thank

56- …………………… people inhabited this island 2000 years ago.

a) primitive b) Relative c) causative d) motive

57- Please don't laugh. I'm ………………... .

a) series b) serials c) serious d) sercret

58- He travelled ………………… on a business trip.

a) broad b) aboard c) broaden d) abroad

59- This historical place is off the beaten track because of its ………………… .

a) remote b) remoteness c) remoting d) remoted

60- Asia is the largest …………………… in the world.

a) city b) country c) committy d) continent

61- I'll visit you ………………….. I have time.

a) wherever b) whoever c) whatever d) whenever

62- He ………………... me a good book to read.

a) commented b) recommended c) advised d) contacted

63- The lifeguard rescued the …………………… boy.

a) drowning b) sinking c) sunken d) drown

64- My grandfather was a sailor in the …………………… .

a) army b) team c) staff d) navy

65- This is a ………………… ship. The crew look for whales to hunt.

a) walling b) whaling c) walking d) weaving

66- In "Moby Dick", Captain Ahab is absolutely ……….. to catch the white whale.

a) determined b) sure c) serious d) primitive

67- When the ship sank, the ………………… were saved by a passing ship.

a) staff b) group c) crew d) employees

68- I can really …………………… this book. I couldn't put it down.

a) recommend b) build c) admire d) wish

69- A shop in our city was completely ……………….. by fire last night.

a) hurt b) injured c) flooded d) destroyed

70- Ahmed is very …….. about winning the championship. He's practised so well.

a) definite b) serious c) thoughtful d) seriously

Language Focus

Past perfect الماضى التام

✍ يتكون الماضى التام من **had + p.p.**

✍ **يستخدم الماضى التام ليصف حدث بدأ وانتهى قبل بداية حدث آخر فى الماضى :**

After +	فاعل +	ماضى تام +	ماضى بسيط
After +	v. + ing	+	ماضى بسيط
Having +	p.p	+	ماضى بسيط

- **After he had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.
- **After reading** the novel, he **watched** TV. = **Having read** the novel, ...

As soon as +	فاعل +	ماضى تام +	ماضى بسيط

- He **parked** his car **as soon as** he **had found** a place.

✍ **يستخدم الماضى التام قبل أو بعد when و ذلك حسب ترتيب الأحداث :**

- **When** he **arrived**, we **had finished** our dinner.
- **When** we **had finished** our dinner, he **arrived**.

ماضى بسيط منفى (غالبا)	+	**till / until**	+	ماضى تام

- He **didn't park** his car **until** he **had found** a place.
- He **stayed** in bed **until** half past nine.

♦ **أحيانا يستخدم بعد because اذا كان الشرط قد سبق النتيجة فى الحدوث :**

- We were late because the bus **had broken** down.

Before	+ فاعل	+ ماضى بسيط	+	ماضى تام
Before	+ v. + ing		+	ماضى تام
By the time	+ فاعل	+ ماضى بسيط	+	ماضى تام

- Before he **watched** TV **/ watching** TV, he **had read** the novel.

✍ **يستخدم الماضى التام مع by اذا تلاها ما يدل على الماضى :**

- **By last** Friday, he **had finished** the report.

✍ **يستخدم مع already/ just /never/yet إذا كانت الجملة فى الماضى :**

- When we **arrived** at the cinema, the film **had already started**.

فاعل + had + **no sooner** + p.p	+ **than**	+	ماضى بسيط
فاعل + had + **hardly / scarcely** + p.p..	+ **when**	+	ماضى بسيط

- We **had no sooner finished** painting our new house **than** we **moved** into it.
- We **had hardly finished** painting our new house **when** we **moved** into it.

✍ لاحظ استخدام **no sooner/hardly/scarcely** بين **had** و التصريف الثالث(pp)

✍ إذا بدأت الجملة بـهم نضع الجملة الأولى فى صيغة استفهام.

- **No sooner had we finished** painting our new house **than** we **moved** into it.
- **Hardly had we finished** painting our new house **when** we **moved** into it.

It was only when	+	ماضى تام	+	**that**	+	ماضى بسيط
It wasn't until	+	ماضى تام	+	**that**	+	ماضى بسيط

- **It was only when** he **had found** a place **that** he **parked** his car.
- **It wasn't until** he had found a place **that** he **parked** his car.

Immediately on / Shortly after + noun / v_ing ……. , ماضى بسيط

- Immediately on arriving home / his arrival, he discovered what happened.

✍ لابد من استخدام الماضى التام إذا كان ذلك يؤثر على معنى الجملة(مع ضمائر الوصل).

- He **thanked** me for **what** I'**d done**. - He **found** the bag which he'**d lost**.

✍ لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين الجمل الآتية :

► **When** I **woke** up, my father **left**. = He left at the moment I woke up. تلاحق
► **When** I **woke** up, my father **had left**. = He left before I woke up. تتابع

Past Perfect Continuous زمن الماضى التام المستمر

✍ يتكون الماضى التام المستمر من **had been + v. + ing**

- They **had been waiting for** an hour **when** the train **arrived**.

1- يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر لوصف حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى قبل وقوع حدث أخر كالتالى: (تتابع + مدة) :

After / **As soon as**	+	ماضى تام مستمر	+	**since** / **for** / **all**	+ مدة زمنية ,	ماضى بسيط

- **After** I **had been studying all morning**, my father **arrived**.

Before / **By the time** / **When**	+	ماضى بسيط ,	ماضى تام مستمر	+	**since** / **for** / **all**	+ مدة زمنية

- They **had been waiting for** an hour **before** the train **arrived**.
- When we visited my cousins in Canada, they'**d been living** there for six months.

ماضى بسيط منفى + **till** / **until**	+	ماضى تام مستمر	+ **since** / **for** / **all**	+ مدة زمنية

- He didn't travel to London **till** he **had been learning** English **for** five years.

How long + ماضى تام مستمر +	when before by the time	+ ماضى بسيط ?

- **How long had** you **been waiting when** your train **arrived**?

2- <u>يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر لتقديم سبب لحدث أو مظهر فى الماضى :</u>

- I was very tired when I arrived home. I **had been working** hard **all day**.
- There **were** floods because it **had been raining for** three days.

✍ **<u>يأتى الماضى التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل :</u>**

wait / do / study / live / work / stay / play / watch /
sleep / paint / read / write / talk / run / walk / travel

- What **had he been doing when** the accident **happened**?

1- <u>إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضى التام البسيط و ليس التام المستمر:</u>

- **When** I met **Ahmed**, he **had finished** typing 3 reports.

2- <u>لاحظ أن هناك أفعال لا تستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها الماضى التام المستمر (الشعور – الحواس – الفهم – الادراك – الملكية) ماعدا feel / hurt :</u>

- We **were** good friends. We **had known** each other for 10 years.

3- <u>كما لا يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الأفعال التى لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة فى حدوثها مثل break down / stop / close / open / end / finish / spend / send / pass / fail / receive وفى هذه الحالة نستخدم الماضى التام البسيط :</u>

- She **was** late for the meeting because her car **had broken** down.

✍ ***<u>Choose the correct answer:</u>***

1- She changed the conference date though she .... already sent 20 invitations.
a) has b) had c) has had d) had had

2- Unfortunately, although he …………….. for six months, Ali didn't win the race.
a) trained b) has trained c) was training d) had been training

3- My friend and I .... on the phone for more than an hour before I put it down.
a) talked b) has been talking c) had been talking d) had talked

4- Ali wasn't feeling well yesterday. He …………………… hard all weekend.
a) had been studying b) had studied c) studied d) was studying

5- By the time he finished reading the report, he …………….. two bottles of water.
a) drank b) has drunk c) had been drinking d) had drunk

6- When his novel came out in 1851, he …………………. for five years.
a) had written b) has been writing c) had been writing d) wrote

7- After he…………………… school, he worked in very ordinary jobs.
a) had left b) has left c) leave d) was leaving

8- When Ali went to university, he …………………. English for ten years.
a) had studied b) studied c) has been studying d) had been studying

9- I was tired yesterday because I ………………. until late the night before.
a) had been reading b) read c) had read d) have been reading

10- We …………. about staying in Alex., but finally decided to go to the Red Sea.

a) had been thinking b) has thought c) think d) is thinking

11- There was water on all the fields because it ………………. for three days.

a) has been raining b) rained c) had rained d) had been raining

12- Amir …………. school when he was 15, so he was not able to go to university.

a) had been leaving b) leaves c) had left d) has left

13- When the bus arrived at six o'clock, I ………………. for an hour!

a) had been waiting b) waited c) had waited d) was waiting

14- The bus …………….. down. That's why Leila was late for school yesterday.

a) broken b) had broken c) had been broken d) was broken

15- He ……………… on the phone for an hour when the doorbell rang.

a) talked b) had talked c) was talking d) had been talking

16- By the time my mother was aged 30, she ………………. five children.

a) was had b) had had c) had been having d) have had

17- I ………….. for an hour before I realised I was so far away from the beach.

a) had been swimming b) had swum c) swam d) was swimming

18- Years ago, after Zakaria …………………… school. he worked on a farm.

a) was leaving b) had been leaving c) left d) had left

19- Professor Williams ………………. his important book about life and science at the time of his death.

a) finished b) hadn't finished c) hadn't been finishing d) hadn't finishing

20- I'm sorry I didn't answer your call yesterday. I …………. with my friends when my family had an emergency and I completely forgot to return your call.

a) was studying b) had studied c) had been studying d) studied

21- Mariam looked so happy when we saw her last week. Perhaps she …..………. good grades on her exams.

a) had got b) got c) had been getting d) has got

22- By the time Melville was in his mid twenties, he …………. all over the world.

a) already travelled b) had already travelled

c) had already been travelling d) has already travelled

23- On the day before my grandfather died, he …………… with my father. It had been a special day out for them.

a) has been sailing b) had sailed c) was sailing d) sailed

24- By the time I went to sleep, I …………………….. a short story.

a) had been reading b) had read c) have read d) read

25- The two boys looked very tired. They …………………. football for two hours.

a) have been playing b) had been playing c) play d) would play

26- Ann woke in the middle of the night. She was frightened. Perhaps she …….. .

a) is dreaming b) dreams c) has dreamt d) had been dreaming

27- Mother looked exhausted. She …………………….. for 2 hours.

a) cooks b) has cooked c) is cooking d) had been cooking

28- When I arrived at the meeting, I found that it …………………… .

a) has just ended b) had just ended c) was just ending d) just ends

29- He was so busy. By the time he stopped for lunch, he ……….. 17 phone calls.

a) had made b) made c) had been making d) has made

30- How long …………………… before your train arrived?

a) had you wait b) have you waited

c) are you waiting d) had you been waiting

31- There were floods as it ……………………. for three days.

a) had been raining b) has been raining c) was raining d) rains

32- When I went to my friend's flat, she ………………. for school.

a) already left b) has already c) left d) had already left

33- He said he ………………… of travelling abroad since he was a child.

a) dream b) had dreamt c) has dreamt d) had been dreaming

34- Amr and his wife ..………………. into their own flat yesterday. Before that, they had lived with Amr's parents

a) move b) have moved c) moved d) had been moving

35- My father retired last week. He ……………for the same company all his life.

a) worked b) has worked c) has been working d) had worked

36- Ali fell asleep during the match because he ……… to bed late the night before.

a) had gone b) has gone c) was going d) had been going

37- Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he ……………enough time to eat before it started.

a) wasn't having b) hadn't had c) doesn't have d) won't have

38- Hassan ………………. money from Ali because he had left his money at home.

a) borrows b) had borrowed c) borrowed d) was borrowing

39- Adel asked which team was red because he …………. these teams before.

a) doesn't see b) hasn't seen c) can't see d) hadn't seen

40- Paul …………………. for work for over a year before he got a job.

a) has looked b) was looking c) had been looking d) looks

41- By the time she ……….. writing her report, she had drunk three cups of coffee.

a) finishes b) finished c) has finished d) was finishing

42- Their clothes ………… dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.

a) are b) have been c) were being d) were

43- He ……… for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.

a) had been driving b) was driving c) drives d) to drive

44- I ………………………ill for nearly a week so I went to a doctor

a) am feeling b) was feeling c) had been feeling d) feel

45- The town was flooded. It …………………. for 3 days.

a) has rained b) had been raining c) has been raining d) rains

46- We arrived late and by the time we sat down, the film ………………… .

a) has started b) had started c) is starting d) starts

47- My clothes were dirty because I ……………….. the car all morning.

a) had been repairing b) had repaired c) am repairing d) repaired

48- Tamer ……………… to five countries by the age of 23.

a) travelled b) has travelled c) had travelled d) travelling

49- Before I travelled to France, I …………………. French for ten years.

a) had been studying b) had studied c) is studying d) studied

50- By the time the holiday was over, I ………… the whole book.

a) had been reading b) had read c) read d) was reading

51- Sara and Nesma ……… for more than an hour when their friend Hana arrived.

a) had been talking b) had talked c) were talking d) talked

52- I ……………… five chocolate bars before I started to feel sick.

a) was eating b) have eaten c) eaten d) had eaten

53- Emad ………………… travelling for five months and he missed home.

a) has been b) was c) had been d) is

54- When we arrived home, we saw that our lights ………………… left on.

a) have been b) was c) had d) had been

55- When I was born, my parents ………………… in their flat for three years.

a) have been living b) had lived c) had been living d) lived

56- By the time I turned 18, I had ……………… all the plays written by Shakespeare.

a) been studying b) studied c) been studied d) study

57- Before I met you, I ………………… for two hours and I felt very tired.

a) have been running b) had been running c) have run d) had run

58- By the time he arrived yesterday, the meeting ………………… over.

a) had been b) has been **c) had been being d) were**

59- Mohanad looked very tired. Perhaps he ……………… badly the night before.

a) has slept b) had slept c) had been sleeping d) was slept

60- After ………………… the instructions, I was able to use the machine.

a) had read b) had been reading c) read d) reading

61- Leila looked very happy when I saw her. Perhaps she ………………… a prize.

a) has won b) had been winning c) had won d) wins

62- Ehab had ………………… reading his book so he was looking for a new one.

a) been finishing b) finished c) being finished d) finishing

63- She seemed to be very happy. Perhaps she ……………… some good news.

a) is receiving b) had received c) had been receiving d) recieves

62- As soon as I ………………… him, I told him the good news.

a) see b) have seen c) had been seeing d) had seen

63- She was tired when she arrived home. She ………………… all day.

a) had been working b) is working c) had worked d) worked

64- By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus had already………………… .

a) been leaving b) leaved c) lift d) left

65- Having ………………… the e-mail, he made two phone calls.

a) sending b) been sent c) sent d) been sending

66- When I saw him, he ………………… finished his work yet.

a) hasn't b) hadn't c) hasn't been d) hadn't been

67- He didn't know the truth until he ………………… the newspaper.

a) had read b) reads c) had been reading d) was reading

68- No sooner ………………… left the building than it collapsed.

a) he had b) he had been c) had he d) had he been

69- I was terribly afraid because I ………………… never flown before.

a) have b) had c) had been d) have been

70- He started writing in his mid twenties. By then, he …..……. all over the world.

a) travels b) had been travelling c) has travelled d) had travelled

Exercises on Unit 10

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have believed for a while that mobiles are harmful to our health, due to the exposure of radiation. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe. After all people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Wireless (Wi-Fi) can cause headaches, nausea, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology now there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electrical gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without **them**, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause cancerous brain tumours if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

A) Choose the correct answer :

1. Who are most affected by using mobile phones?

a) Mobile companies. b) Workers. c) Children. d) Adults.

2. What do the phone companies tell us about mobile phones?

a) They're safe. **b) They're expensive.**
c) They're dangerous. **d) They're terrifying.**

3. What does new research show about smoking?

a) It's as dangerous as mobile phones.
b) It's more dangerous than mobile phones.
c) They are both safe.
d) mobile phones are more dangerous than smoking.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

a) Mobile phones. **b) Cordless phones.**
c) Computers. **d) Electrical gadgets.**

B) Answer the following questions :

5. What is the best title to the passage?

6. Why do phone companies say mobile phone use is safe?

7. Which symptoms may wireless cause in human beings?

8. Why does the author advise us not to turn on wireless gadgets in bedrooms?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

More and more parents today choose to send their children to boarding school. But some children enjoy the experience. Others find ***it*** difficult and unpleasant. So, what really are the advantages and disadvantages for boarding schools? There are certain advantages to attending a boarding school. To start with, pupils learn to rely on themselves and make their own decisions. As a result, they become more independent, Furthermore boarding schools have excellent facilities such as swimming pools, theatres and cinemas and pupils are encouraged to take part in many activities.

However, living in a boarding school has its disadvantages. Students feel very lonely when they are separated from their parents and other family members. The majority of Boarding schools pupils come from wealthy families as a result pupils from poorer families might feel insecure or isolated.

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- Most students in a boarding school come from ………………..… families.

a) poor **b) rich** **c) weak** **d) bad**

2- What does the underlined word " ***it*** " refer to?

a) The experience **b) boarding school**
c) Going to a boarding school **d) All of them**

3- One advantage of boarding schools is that students become ……………… .

a) dependent **b) insecured** **c) isolated** **d) independent**

4- In a boarding school the ……………. of pupils come from poorer families.

a) majority **b) most** **c) minority** **d) more**

B) Answer the following questions

5- What does a boarding school teach pupils?
6- How do pupils feel when they are separated from their families?
7- Are you for or against boarding schools? why?
8- What do you think we can do to develop Education in Egypt?

3- Write an essay of about 180 words on one of the following:

1- How we can attract tourists to visit Egypt again. 2- Hunting

4- A) Translate into Arabic:

1- Africa is the home of rhinoceros. It's a big animal with two horns on his snout. It isn't made of bone but of pressed hair. However, it's solid enough to withstand blows against hard objects.

2- Once a speeding car hit an old gentleman. The driver lifted the wounded man and comforted him saying, "You're lucky. The accident had taken place in front of a doctor's house.

3- People are hungry not because there is food shortage, but because the food is not fairly distributed to all those who need it.

4- Working around the clock causes stress and burnout. Daily physical exercise is the solution because it relieves stress.

5- Novels and stories are not only written for entertainment but they also give morals.

6- The leader should be wise, intelligent, tolerant, patient, brave and democratic.

B) Translate into English:

1- العديد من الحيوانات تأقلمت جيداً لكى تتمكن من أن تتعايش فى الأجواء المتطرفة، و هناك الكثير من البيئات المختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم، و لكنها جميعاً غنية بالحياة البرية.

2- لقد تكيفت العديد من الحيوانات مع الحياة فى أشد درجات الحرارة و البرودة، و لعل القط البرى المصرى يُعد واحداً من تلك الحيوانات التى تكيفت بشكل جيد مع هذه الحياة.

3- إن قطع الغابات يمكن أن تكون له تأثيرات خطيرة علي المناخ فهذا يزيد من نسبة ثانى اكسيد الكربون فى الغلاف الجوى.

4- من المهم أن تعلم أن نتائج أفعالك قد تؤثر على كثير من النـاس لذلك فكر كثيـرا قبل أن تُقدم على فعل شئ ما.

5- تسعى الحكومة الحالية لدعم الاقتصاد المصرى عن طريق عودة السياحة وتشجيع الاستثمار.

6- يحتاج الشعب المصرى الى اعادة النظر فى الخريطة السياسية من اجل ديمقراطية سليمة.

Unit 11 : Population, Health and the Environment

Vocabulary

arthritis	التهاب المفاصل	decrease	يقل (عدد / كمية / حجم)
cell	خلية	hostile	عدوانى
cure for / of	علاج لـ / يعالج من	North Pole	القطب الشمالى
diabetes (diabetic)	السكر (مصاب بالسكر)	South Pole	القطب الجنوبى
mend	يصلح	rapid / rapidly	سريع / بسرعة
operate	يجرى عملية جراحية	trend	اتجاه / ميل / موقف
progress	تقدم / يتقدم	planet	كوكب
tissue	نسيج	unrecognisable	لا يمكن التعرف عليه
treat / treatment	يعالج / علاج	operation	عملية جراحية
painful	مؤلم	pray	يصلى
traditionally	بصورة تقليدية	boss	رئيس
point	يشير / اشارة	prevent	يمنع
recycling	تدوير المواد	establish	يؤسس
upset	مكتئب	remove	يزيل
suppose	يفترض	jungles	ادغال
population	تعداد السكان	equipment	معدات
currently	حاليا	melt	يذوب
environment	بيئة	total	اجمالى
guest	ضيف	recognise	يتعرف على
care / rare	رعاية / نادر	recognition	معرفة
distant	بعيد	option	اختيار
common diseases	امراض شائعة	development	تطور / تنمية
damage	تلف	production	انتاج
technique	اسلوب	health care	الرعاية الصحية
conclusion	نتيجة / خاتمة	import / export	يستورد / يصدر
assure / reassure	يؤكد / يطمئن	breakable	قابل للكسر
bright	لامع	come true	يتحقق
spread	ينشر / ينتشر	defend / defence	يدافع / دفاع
function	وظيفة	movements	حركات
fuel / flu	وقود / انفلونزا	according to	طبقا لـ
hopefully	بكل امل	drinkable	صالح للشرب
matter	موضوع / يهم	believable	يمكن تصديقه
nervous	عصبى	unlikely	غير محتمل
climate change	تغير المناخ	growing	متزايد
manage	يدير / يتحكم فى	unemployment	البطالة

unreadable	صعب القراءة	employer	صاحب العمل
gradually	تدريجيا	employee	موظف

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

break a promise	يخلف وعد	environmental issue	قضية بيئية
drop out of	يتسرب من	make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات
take turns to ...	يتناوب الادوار لكى	look upset	يبدو مكتئبا
look into	يفحص	make sure	يتأكد
do research into	يقوم بعمل بحث عن	daily lives	الحياة اليومية
cope with	يساير / يجارى	incurable diseases	امراض مستعصية
regular exercises	تمارين منتظمة	operate on	يجرى جراحة لـ
plenty of	وفرة من	start by	يبدأ بـ
work on	يعمل على تحسين	over a period of time	لفترة من الوقت
make progress	يصنع التقدم	run his own business	يدير عمل خاص به
keep fit and healthy	يحافظ علي لياقته	be crippled with ...	يعاني من ...
the not-too-distant future	المستقبل القريب	research teams	فرق الابحاث
treatment for	علاج لـ	There's no point in	لا فائدة فى

General Words

birth rate	معدل المواليد	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
death rate	معدل الوفيات	hospitality	كرم الضيافة
rural areas	المناطق الريفية	homesickness	الحنين للوطن
urban areas	المناطق الحضرية	residence	إقامة
family planning	تنظيم الأسرة	migration	هجرة
birth control	تحديد النسل	minority	أقلية
population explosion	الانفجار السكانى	majority	أغلبية

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
common	usual	rare
hostile	aggressive	friendly
nervous	upset	calm / relaxed
melt	dissolve	solidify
rapid	fast / quick	slow
total	entire	partial

warm	hot	cool
progress	advance	decline
dry	waterless	wet / rainy

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
recognise	recognition	recognisable
progress	progress	progressive
remove	removal	removable
employ	employment	employable
operate	operation	operative
pain	pain	painful
equip	equipment	equipped
predict	prediction	predictable
develop	development	developmental
differ	difference	different
brighten	bright	brightness
recycle	recycling	recycled / recyclable

Spot The Difference

weather	climate
ice	an ice
melt	molten
reduce	decrease
plant	planet
rapid	fast
mend	amend
care	cure
organs	members
between	among
issue	tissue
recognisable	recognised
repair	reform
hostile	hostel
operation	process
progress	progression
recycled	recyclable

Read the following carefully

Listening :

The Future of Medicine

Presenter: Good afternoon and welcome to "The World Tomorrow", the programme which looks into the future and predicts what life will be like in 20, **30 or 40 years' time**. Today's guest is a university professor of medicine who is **currently** doing research into **new ways of treating** common diseases. Welcome to the programme Professor Osman. Could you **start by** telling us what kinds of diseases you are **working on** at the moment?

Prof Osman: Thank you, of course. At the moment, my research team and I are looking at three of the world's commonest diseases: diabetes, heart disease and arthritis. I'm pleased to say that we're making progress in all three areas. We think that fewer people will **be living with** these diseases in the future.

Presenter: That's excellent news. So, are you working on new treatments for these diseases?

Prof Osman: Yes, we are, but the most exciting news is that sometime in the **not-too-distant future**, we'll be treating these diseases to cure them and not only to manage them.

Presenter: How is curing a disease different from managing it?

Prof Osman: Well, let's take the example of diabetes. At the moment, we cannot cure diabetes. If **someone** has the disease, **they'll** always have it. We can only help people to manage it so that it doesn't become worse. In 2030, people may be taking medicines which cure diabetes completely, so that the person no longer has the disease.

Presenter: That really is very exciting. Could you explain how this is possible?

Prof Osman: Well, traditionally, doctors have always treated diseases by giving their patients medicines of some kind, or by operating on them. In the future, we'll be using new cells from patients to repair parts of their body which are damaged. So, if a patient's heart is damaged, we'll be able to mend it with new cells from the patient's own body. We'll also be making new tissue from the cells in a laboratory.

Presenter: This is fantastic. When are we likely to see these developments?

Prof Osman: I think that I'll be working on the project for the next 15 to 20 years.

Presenter: Thank you for being our guest this afternoon, Professor Osman, and for bringing us such good news.

Prof Osman: It's my pleasure.

Reading

Our Future Environment

Many experts are predicting that the population of the world <u>will increase</u> to around ten billion by the year 2100. At the same time as the population increases, they believe that **rapid** climate change <u>will affect</u> our environment. Climate

scientists are now looking at the effect of this **trend** on our growing population. Some believe that in the year 2100, the **planet** we *will be living* on will be almost **unrecognisable**.

Most people agree that, over the next 50–100 years, the earth *will be getting* gradually warmer because of climate change. This means that the ice on mountains, at the North Pole and at the South Pole *will be melting* very quickly. This will probably cause serious floods and may mean that many people will have to leave their homes. The prediction is that in 2100, many millions of people *will be living* in different areas or even in different countries because of floods. Also, climate change will turn other areas into desert and this will affect food production. This means that in the future, more people *will be importing* their food from areas less affected by climate change.

It is also possible that the world's population may not increase to ten billion. If the effects of climate change mean that our environment becomes hostile, the populations of some countries *may even be decreasing* in around 40 years' time. Of course, we cannot be sure that any of these predictions will come true. However, we can be certain that scientists and engineers *will be working* hard to reduce the effects of climate change, for example by building **flood defences** to protect growing cities.

Definitions

arthritis	a disease that causes pain and swelling in the joints of the body
cell	the smallest unit of a living thing
cure	to make someone better
diabetes	a disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood
mend	repair something that's broken or damaged
operate	cut open someone's body to remove or repair a part that's damaged
progress	to move forward , develop or improve.
tissue	what plant and animal cells are made of
decrease	to become less
hostile	very unpleasant , unfriendly or aggressive
pole	the most southerly or northerly part of the world
rapid	very fast
trend	the way a situation is developing
planet	very large round object in space which goes round the sun
unrecognisable	changed so much in a way completely different
flood defences	protection against floods for towns and buildings

Language Notes

- **a year's time**: **في غضون سنة** (اضافة ملكية لاسم مفرد)
- **30 years' time**: **في غضون ثلاثون سنة** (اضافة ملكية لاسم جمع)

- **a way to + مصدر** : - Scientists should find ways to treat common diseases.
- **a way of + v_ing**: - Scientists should find ways of treating ....

- **start by + v_ing**: - Could you start by telling us what kinds of diseases … ?
- **start with + noun اسم** : - I would like to start my meal with some soup.

- **increase in** زيادة في - There is an increase in road accidents.
- **increase to** يزداد الي - The world population will increase to ten billions.
- **increase by** يزداد بنسبة - The prices increased by 30 percent.

- **reason for** سبب لـ - There is no reason for death.
- **cause of** سبب لـ - What is the cause of global warming?
- **cause** يسبب - Global warming will cause setrious floods.

- **treat** (يتعامل مع مرض) يعالج - The doctor treated his illness quickly.
- **heal** يضمد / يلتئم - His wounds healed. / This ointment healed my wounds.
- **cure** (يُشفى مرض) يعالج - The medicine cured him of his illness.
  - Some diseases can be cured but some can't.

- **affect** يؤثر على - The rapid climate change will affect our environment.
- **effect** تأثير - The effect of climate change will be more serious.

common : لها شكلان في المقارنة
(more common – most common) (commoner – commonest)
- The world's commonest diseases : diabetes , heart disease and arthritis.

Currently حالياً : يأتي معها مضارع مستمر
- He is currently doing research into new ways of treating common diseases.

Turn into يحول الي - The climate change will turn other areas into desert.

If **someone** has diabetes, **they** will always have it. (الفعل مفرد والضمير جمع)

Prefixes and Suffixes

معنى الكلمة يتغير عند إضافة بادئة أو لاحقة لها :

The word		The Prefix البادئة		The suffix اللاحقة	
recognise	يتعرف على	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه	recognizable	يمكن تمييزه
drink	يشرب	undrinkable	لا يمكن شربه	drinkable	قابل للشرب
believe	يصدق	unbelievable	لا يصدق	believable	يمكن تصديقه

read	يقرأ	unreadable	لا يقرأ	readable	يمكن قراءته
employ	يوظف	unemployment	البطالة	employment	توظيف
employ	يوظف	unemployed	عاطل	employee	موظف
break	يكسر	unbreakable	لا يكسر	breakable	قابل للكسر
cure	يعالج	incurable	مستعصي	curable	يمكن علاجه
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسيء فهم	misunderstanding	سوء فهم

Language Functions

Expressing Worries التعبير عن القلق

Saying you're worried	Reassuring
It really worries me.	There's no point in worrying about it.
I found it very worrying.	Try to look on the bright side.
I'm worried. It'll spread here.	I'm sure it will be fine.
That doesn't stop me from worrying.	Just relax. Don't worry.
I'm feeling very nervous.	Don't worry about it.
I worry about	

✍ *Choose the correct answer:*

1- It's now possible to put new ……….. into the patient's body to treat some illnesses.
a) cells b) soils c) organs d) cellular

2- Doctors are making ………. towards successfully treating many common diseases.
a) programs b) probaganda c) jobs d) progress

3- My grandfather finds walking painful because he has ………….. in his knees.
a) colic b) diarrhea c) arthritis d) arteries

4- Doctors sometimes use ……... made in a laboratory to repair damaged body parts.
a) skin b) tissue c) test tubes d) funnels

5- Her uncle has ………. , so he's taking medicine to control the sugar in his blood.
a) headache b) stomachache c) cancer d) diabetes

6- Sleeping for an hour or two always ……………….. his headaches.
a) cures b) sharpens c) increases d) doubles

7- There are so many new buildings on the beach that it has become …………… .
a) unbreakable b) unrecognisable c) unreadable d) unbeleviable

8- There has been a small ……………… in the number of people who visited the museum this year.
a) decrease b) debate c) debit d) decay

9- There are eight …………. which go round our sun.
a) plants b) stars c) planets d) pants

10- Jungles and deserts can be …………… environments for people to live in.
a) hostility b) hosts c) fantastically d) hostile

11- Global warming is a modern ………….. that many people are worried about.
a) trade b) trend c) road d) tend

12- After the earthquake, our area became ……………. . I can't find my house.

a) known b) recognizable c) unrecognisable d) recognise

13- Our plants will die because there is a ………………. in the amount of rain.

a) decrease b) increase c) raise d) rise

14- Small animals often make ....… movements to escape from their enemies.

a) racket b) rocket c) rapid d) rapidly

15- If more land becomes deserts, food ………………. will be affected.

a) production b) prediction c) infection d) section

16- We need to ……. the hospital equipment that was damaged in the earthquake.

a) mind b) fax c) mend d) amend

17- Take one of these pills and they will ………….. your headache immediately.

a) treatment b) cure c) curative d) care

18- After the road accident , doctors had to …………………. on the driver's leg.

a) co-operate b) lubricate c) collaborate d) operate

19- In the future, do you think people will be ………… healthier than they are now?

a) more b) less c) most d) much

20- How do you think that health ……………. will change in the future ?

a) care b) cure c) cart d) treat

21- A team of scientists are studying some of the world's ……………… diseases.

a) cinnamon b) rarely c) commonest d) communist

22- What is the difference between curing a disease and …………….. it?

a) manage b) managing c) merge d) management

23- He's currently …………. research into new ways of treating common diseases.

a) making b) do c) doing d) taking

24- What kinds of diseases are you working …………….. at the moment ?

a) at b) in c) with d) on

25- My ….….. team and I are looking at three of the world's commonest diseases.

a) research b) searching c) search d) researching

26- We can't cure ……………… people but we can help them manage diabetes.

a) diabetes b) diabetic c) dialectic d) domestic

27- We will also be ……………….. new tissue from the cells in a laboratory.

a) doing b) taking c) managing d) making

28- One should look at the ……………….. side of life to feel satisfied.

a) flight b) light c) bright d) right

29-They believe that rapid climate change will …………… our environment.

a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection

30- The earth will be getting ………….. warmer because of climate change .

a) gradual b) regular c) graduation d) gradually

31- The ……….. on mountains at the North and the South Pole will be melting.

a) ice cream b) ice c) snowy d) icy

32- If ice melts, it will probably cause serious ………………. .

a) blood b) mud c) floods d) funds

33- Climate change can also affect food ……….. if other areas become desert.

a) grow b) producer c) taste d) production

34- Of course , we can't be sure that any of these predictions will ……….. true.

a) make b) come c) do d) have

35- People should build flood ………….. to protect growing cities.

a) defences b) attackers c) fences d) curtains

36- Small children should be careful with glass because it is …………………. .

a) break b) unbreakable c) breaking d) breakable

37- I can't read the magazine because the print is so small. It is ………………. .

a) breakable b) readable c) unreadable d) drinkable

38- The water in this river is ……………… . It becomes very dirty.

a) undrinkable b) drunk c) drinking d) drinkable

39- Many experts are predicting the world population to ………….. to ten billion.

a) decrease b) reduce c) increase d) discount

40- Dams are mainly built to be some sort of ……………….. against floods.

a) injection b) protection c) infection d) inspection

41- Cancer is a serious illness, but it can be … ……………… nowadays.

a) distributed b) cured c) caught d) healed

42- That girl was openly …………. towards her friends so they don't like her.

a) friendly b) hostile c) gentle d) tolerant

43- Doctors know the difference …………. curing a disease and managing it.

a) in b) among c) from d) between

44- Climate change will turn some areas ……………….. desert.

a) into b) up c) out d) in

45- It's …………………… for a driver to ignore traffic lights.

a) thinkable b) lawful c) unthinkable d) expected

46- My grandfather has a serious illness. The surgeon will …… on him tomorrow.

a) operate b) cooperate c) recuperate d) fabricate

47- This medicine is effective. It will …………… your cough.

a) currative b) cure c) treatment d) curable

48- My friend lives in a flat whose roof needs to be …………………. .

a) mind b) amend c) mended d) fix

49- Egypt should make remarkable ………………… in the field of tourism.

a) research b) jobs c) progress d) work

50- A ……………... environment is the place which will be difficult to live in

a) friendly b) hostile c) suitable d) splendid

51- A reasonable ……………. in birth rate will help Egypt to plan well for the future.

a) raise b) increase c) decrease d) rise

52- Which ……………. is farther from the sun, Neptune or Saturn ?

a) planet b) star c) stare d) plant

53- We should ban using insecticides to see the effect of this …….. on our health?

a) tart b) trim c) trend d) tram

54- If a story is difficult to believe, we say it is ………………….. .

a) believable b) unreadable c) belief d) unbelievable

55- Reem is ………………….. because she is extremely beautiful .

a) unrecognisable b) recognisable c) recognition d) recognize

56- Which of the following prefixes forms the antonym of "common"?

a) im b) in c) un d) dis

57- In the word "waterless", the suffix "less" means ………………… .

a) with b) without c) full d) lack

58- What do you think of the effect of this ……………… on our village?

a) tend b) trend c) intend d) mend

59- Egypt ………………… computers and cars from Japan.

a) improves b) export c) port d) import

60- If we don't put an end to the ………. growth of population, we will suffer a lot.

a) rapid b) raped c) rapeed d) rapide

Translate into English

1- لقد أحرزت مصر تقدما كبيرا فى مجالات الصناعة و التجارة و وسائل الاتصال

2- يجب ان تبذل دول العالم جهودا مضنية لحل مشكلات التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري.

3- يعتقد العلماء أن الكرة الأرضية ستكون أكثر دفئا في الخمسين سنة القادمة.

4- نستطيع العيش في سلام بمزيد من التعاون والمشاركة الفعالة ومحاولة فهم الأخر.

5- يجب أن يعلم كل الآباء بأنهم المسئولين عن تربية جيل يدرك مشكلات الوطن و كيفية حلها.

6- علي الدول العربية أن تتكاتف لمواجهة التحديات والأخطار التي تحيط بأمتنا العربية.

7- تعمل الحكومة جاهدة علي زيادة رقعة الأرض الزراعية وذلك باستصلاح ألاف الأفدنة سنوياً.

8- يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين فى الصناعة و التكنولوجيا.

9- للسياحة آثار سلبية على البيئة، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتجنبها.

10- إن تصميم المباني يختلف من بلد لآخر حسب الظروف المناخية.

11- توجد الآن الكثير من ناطحات السحاب في العالم ولكنها بدأت في نيويورك.

12- عندما أذهب إلى الريف أقيم مع أسرتي في منزل بعيد عن القرية.

13- يجب عليك أن تتحلى بالطموح فهو سبيلك للنجاح.

14- من الخطأ أن نعتمد علي مواقع التواصل الإجتماعى فقط للحصول علي الأخبار.

15- للعولمة تأثير كبير علي معظم دول العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.

Language Focus

Future Continuous

will be + v.ing

- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتنبؤ بحدث سوف يكون متواصل الحدوث في وقت ما أو خلال فترة محددة في المستقبل :
- The government **will be trying** to reduce the effects of climate change.
- Between 2020 and 2030, we **will be helping** people with diabetes.
- You'll recognize me when you get there. I'**ll be wearing** jeans and a white t-shirt.
- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن شئ تم الترتيب او التخطيط لحدوثه في المستقبل :
- Don't ring at 8 o'clock. **I'll be having** dinner with my family.
- **I'll be playing** tennis tomorrow from 7 to 9 p.m.
- This time next week, I **will be travelling** to Cairo.
- كما يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)
- You **will be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight.
- I **will be staying** at the Hotel, if anything happens and **you** need to contact me.
- He **will be studying** at the library tonight, so he won't see you when you arrive.
- كما يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين سيستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازى)
- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **will be dancing**.
- I **will be working** hard next week **while** you **will be relaxing** on the beach.
- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن :
- Don't call him now, he'**ll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'**ll be cleaning** the house at the moment.
- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة او حاسة او شعور او ادراك او فهم او ملكية :
- Maher **will be** at my house when you arrive. (Not: ~~will be being~~)
- After I study, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

may be + -ing

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الحدوث (غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل :
- More people **may be moving** to Cairo in the next 50 years.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

✍ ***Choose the correct answer:***

1- The programme predicts what life ………………. like in 40 years' time.
a) would be **b) will have been** **c) will be being** **d) will be**

2- We think that fewer people ……………….. with these deseases in the future.

a) will be living b) may live c) have lived d) have been living

3- We ……………… these deseases to cure them not only to manage them.

a) may treat b) would treat c) will be treating d) may be treat

4- I'm sure that these predictions ………………………. true.

a) will come b) will be coming c) may come d) may be coming

5- I'm not sure but the government …………… vast areas of the desert soon.

a) will be reclaiming b) will reclaim c) may be reclaiming d) have reclaimed

6- I wonder what we ……………………… this time next year.

a) will do b) shall do c) do d) will be doing

7- He's going on holiday. This time next week he ……………. in the sea.

a) will sail b) will be sailing c) sails d) would sail

8- In five years' time, Ali will probably ……………. with his parents.

a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

9- In an hour's time, Hanaa ……………… home on the train.

a) will be travelling b) will travel c) travels d) travelled

10- It's arranged. We …………………… in the red sea tomorrow morning.

a) will swim b) will be swimming c) may be swimming d) may swim

11- In ten years' time, I I hope I ………………….. in a hospital.

a) would work b) may work c) will be working d) will work

12- We …………………… probably be there for two weeks.

a) will b) may c) are going to d) are

13- Amira has a job interview tomorrow. I'm sure she …………………… well.

a) might do b) may do c) will have done d) will be doing

14- This time next week, Samir…………………… basketball with his friends.

a) will be playing b) may play c) may be working d) will play

15- I expect that he …………………… the match next Friday.

a) wins b) will win c) will be winning d) is winning

16- When I'm 80, I think everyone ………………… longer.

a) would live b) may be living c) will be living d) will live

17- Where do you think you ………………………… when you're 50?

a) would work b) may work c) will be working d) will work

18- They ………………….. a new company in the future. It's probable.

a) may be setting b) will set c) will be setting d) would set

19- I think we ………………… new wells of oil soon.

a) may discover b) will be discovering c) discover d) have discovered

20- Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. tomorrow. I …………………… to the airport.

a) drive b) will be driving c) have driven d) would drive

21- The government will be …………… to reduce the effects of climate change.

a) tried b) trying c) trial d) try

22- Many more people ……. be moving to Cairo in the next 50 years. It's probable.
a) should b) could c) would d) may

23- In the future, people ……… taking medicines which cure diabetes completely.
a) will be b) may c) are d) is

24- In 2030, surely we ……………………. people with diabetes.
a) will be helping b) will help c) may be helping d) are helping

25- You should take your umbrella. ……………………….. raining outside.
a) It will b) It may c) It's d) Its

26- In 50 years, people ……………….. living longer than they are now.
a) will b) will be c) are d) may

27-This time next week,I will ……………….. my flat.
a) decorate b) be decorating c) have decorated d) be decorated

28-It ………………… this time tomorrow. It is probable.
a) will raining b) will be rain c) is raining d) may be raining

29-This time next year, we ………………… new friends.
a) will know b) will be knowing c) are knowing d) may be knowing

30-Nader's going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he ……… swimming in the sea.
a) will b) shall be c) will be d) may being

31- In two years' time, Imad ………………… English at university.
a) will be studying b) will study c) will studying d) has studied

32- In 20 years from now, Khaled ………………… his own business.
a) will b) will be c) are d) may

33- Tomorrow, you will ………………… in the sea while I'll be working.
a) be swimming b) swim c) swam d) be wsum

34- Don't come at 4 o'clock tomorrow. I …………………… then.
a) will sleep b) will be sleep c) shall be sleeping d) have slept

35- I'm not sure but I ……………….. be travelling to London next Friday.
a) will b) shall c) am d) may

36- Within three years, my friend Adel will ………………… a new car .
a) own b) be owning c) have own d) owns

Exercises on Unit 11

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The world is a big place, isn't it? But how many people can live on it? It is believed that before the second century CE, the population of the world was below 300 million. The population grew slowly. It took 1,600 years before the population ***doubled*** to 600 million. By the middle of the eighteenth century, it had become 800 million. Then, the population started to grow more quickly. In the year 2000, the population was eight times the amount it had been in 1750, at more than 7 billion. Today, it is about 7.5 billion.

What about the future? It is thought that the population will be growing even faster in the next 100 years. Ten billion people may be living on our planet in the year 2100. However, the population of some countries is going down. There will probably be enough space for everybody, but your ***descendents*** will be living on an even busier planet than the one we live on today.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- What do you think the word *doubled* means?

a- got smaller b- became three times as big

c- became two times as big d- stayed the same

2- The main idea is that the world's population will continue to grow ....

a- but some countries will decrease b- and there will be 10 billion people

c- but it grew slowly in the past d- but the world will be different than today

3- It's clear that the writer is ……………….. about the future.

a- pessimistic b- optimistic c- gloomy d- dim

4- The word *descendents* in bold means ………………. .

a- grandparents b- ancestors c- forefathers d- grandchildren

B) Answer the following questions:

5- How many people live in the world today?

6- When did the population of the world start to grow more quickly?

7- Why do you think that the population will be growing faster in the future?

8- Do you think that there will be enough space for everybody in the future? Why?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Is it difficult for you to remember things for a test? Do you feel tired a lot of the time? Try eating breakfast. Eating a good breakfast can improve memory, concentration and test marks, especially in maths and reading. Breakfast eaters usually eat more fruit, drink more milk and eat a larger variety of food than non-breakfast eaters. **This** gives them more energy.

People who eat a lot of fruit and vegetables are less likely to have heart problems. You should eat at least five portions of fruit and vegetables a day. One portion is e.g. a banana, an apple, one slice of melon or pineapple or two plums. Eating too much salt can raise your blood pressure. People with high blood pressure are three times more likely to develop heart disease than people with normal blood pressure. Three-quarters of the salt we eat is already in the food we buy, such as ready meals. So you could easily be eating too much salt without realising it.

Having too much saturated fat can cause heart disease. Products that contain large amounts of saturated fats are meat, cheese, butter, cream, cakes. You should replace butter with vegetable oils, which don't contain saturated fat. Having sugary foods and drinks too often can cause tooth decay. Cutting down on sugar will help you control your weight. Sugar is added to many types of food e.g.

fizzy drinks, juices, sweets, biscuits, cakes, ice cream. We should drink about 6 to 8 glasses of water every day and even more when the weather is warm. Don't drink too much coffee or tea as they can dehydrate you.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Breakfast can help us to …………………. .

a. raise pressure b. concentrate c. reduce salt d. misunderstand

2. Which school subjects are most affected by having breakfast?

a. Maths and reading. b. Reading and English.
c. English and Arabic d. Maths and sports.

3. What helps protect from heart attacks?

a. Eating a lot of fruit and vegetables. b. Salt and plums.
c. Drinking coffee and tea. d. Having too much saturated fat.

4. The best title to the passage would be ....

a. Cutting down on salt. c. Dangers of saturated fat.
b. Cutting down on sugar. d. How to stay healthy.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**This**" refer to?
6. Why are people with high blood pressure in danger?
7. How, do you think, we can control our weight?
8. What, do you think, makes our bodies dry?

3- Write an essay of about 180 words on one of the following:

1- Global warming 2- Hostile environments

4- A) Translate into Arabic:

1- Trees are useful to us as they give us timber and firewood. The timber is used to make chairs, tables and other furniture. The leaves and fruits of some trees are used to prepare medicines.

2- The crow is a common bird found in our country. It eats all kinds of waste food materials thrown out of the house. It removes all bad smelling things by eating them. So it is called the scavenger of the sky.

3- There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier.

4- Without the benefits of technology, the world would be a much harder place to live in.

B) Translate into Arabic:

1- يتم الآن إنجاز مشروعات الكبيرة فى محاولة لحل المشكلة السكانية فقد تجاوز عدد السكان فى مصر أربع أو خمس مرات ما كان عليه فى القرن العشرين.

2- يُعد الذباب والحشرات سبباً رئيسياً فى تلويث طعامنا بشكل خطير وذلك يحدث عندما تزحف هذه الحشرات الى طعامنا، وهذا بدوره ينقل الجراثيم الى طعامنا.

Unit 12: Keeping safe

Vocabulary

angle	زاوية	stretch	يتمدد
blink	يرمش	electrical	كهربى
bright	لامع / ساطع	electricity	كهرباء
brightness	سطوع / لمعان	simple	بسيط
flat	مستوى	socket	فيشة
height	ارتفاع	point out	يلفت النظر
moist	رطب / مبلل	plug	يوصل الكهرباء
moisture	درجة الرطوبة	unplug	يفصل الكهرباء
permanent	دائم	major / main	رئيسى / اساسى
temporary	مؤقت	majority	اغلبية
position	مكانة / موقع / وضع	overload	يفرط فى التحميل
prevention	وقاية	fire extinguisher	طفاية الحريق
head teacher	معلم أول	active / activity	نشيط / نشاط
rest	يرتاح / راحة	action	فعل / حركة
damaging	مدمر / محطم	common	شائع
health problem	مشكلة صحية	ache	ألم / يؤلم
healthy	صحي	headache	صداع
unusual	غير معتاد	serious	جاد / خطير
adults	البالغين / الكبار	repetitive	متكرر / ممل
bring	يُحضر / يجلب	strain	إجهاد / إرهاق
relation	علاقة	injury	إصابة
mainly	أساسا	involve	يتضمن / يشمل
pain / painful	ألم / مؤلم	sore	موجع / مؤلم
recommend	يوصي	user	مستخدِم
recommendation	توصية / تذكية	avoid	يتجنب
smoke alarm	جهاز إنذار الدخان	personal	شخصي
fire alarm	جهاز إنذار حريق	include	يتضمن / يشمل
period	فترة	remind	يُذَكِر
equipment	معدات (اسم لا يعد)	blanket	بطانية
experience	يتعرض لـ / يمر بـ	connect	يوصل
view	يشاهد / منظر	disconnect	يقطع الاتصال
viewer	مشاهِد	lid	غطاء
level	مستوِي	pour	يصب
smooth	أملس / ناعم	simplicity	بساطة
measure	يقيس	low	منخفض

measurement	قيـاس	sit straight	يجلس معتدلا
slight	طفيف	explain	يشرح / يفسر
slightly	بدرجة طفيفة	go on	يواصل / يستمر
screen	شاشة	persuade = convince	يقنع
fire	حريق/ يفصل/ يطرد	intend	ينوي / يقصد
bathroom	حمام / مرحاض	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
basic rules	قواعد أساسة	escape	يهرب / هروب

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

take a break from	يأخذ استراحة من	let .... down	يخذل
make changes to	يحدث تغييرات فى	equipped with	مجهز بـ
It takes ages	يستغرق فترة طويلة	focus on	يركز علي
fly at a height of....	يطير علي ارتفاع	be in use	مُستخدَم
looks into the future	يستشرف المستقبل	to do with	له علاقة بـ
computer-related	مرتبط بالكمبيوتر	move around	ينتقل
repetitive strain injury	إصابات الإجهاد المتكررة	put out	يطفئ
take regular breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة منتظمة	take an action	يتصرف
do stretching exercises	يقوم بعمل تمارين الإحماء	make...worse	يجعل...أسوء
find it helpful to...	يجد أنه من المفيد أن....	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
in case the worst happens	تحسبا لحدوث الأسوأ	related to	مرتبط بـ
increase in	زيادة فى	follow advice	يتبع نصيحة
work out a fire escape plan	يجد خطة للنجاة من الحريق	spend on	ينفق علي

General Words

underground water	مياه جوفية	hard currency	عملة صعبة
negotiations	مفاوضات	renaissance	نهضة
slight damage	ضرر خفيف	economic recession	ركود اقتصادى
summit conference	مؤتمر قمة	economic recovery	انتعاش اقتصادى
Arab League	جامعة الدول العربية	economic reform	اصلاح اقتصادى
strengthen relations	يدعم العلاقات	economic instability	عدم استقرار اقتصادى
on a big scale	على نطاق واسع	economic inflation	تضخم اقتصادى
press statement	بيان صحفي	economic sanctions	عقوبات اقتصادية

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
plug	connect	unplug
moist	wet / damp	dry

careful	cautious	careless
sensible	wise / rational	insensible
adult	mature	child
pain	ache	relieve
majority	mass / most	minority
permanent	lasting	temporary
stretch	expand / expand	shrink

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
persuade	persuasion	persuasive
regulate	regularation	regular
moisten	moisture	moist
dry	dryness	dry
repeat	repetition	repetitive
prevent	prevention	preventive
instruct	instruction	instructive
separate	separation	separated
include	inclusion	inclusive
explain	explanation	explanatory
stretch	stretch	stretchy / stretchable
recommend	recommendation	recommendable

Spot The Difference

sensible	sensitive
elecrtric	elecrtrical
include	contain
regulation	regularity
quite	rather
humid	moist
angle	angel
everyday	every day
download	upload
repetitive	repeated
damage	damages
moisture	dampness
remember	remind

connect	contact
simple	sample
simplicity	simplification

Read the following carefully

Listening : Computer health and safety

Good morning. I want to thank your head teacher for inviting me to speak to you today about using computers without damaging your health. So, I'm here to answer all the questions that you have sent me over the last week.

We all need computers, don't we? When your head asked me to come here, I wanted to know where the school was. So, I looked on my computer to find it. We all use computers as part of our everyday life, at home, at school and at work. Computers are great, but it's important to use them in the right way, and that is what I want to talk about today.

Many of you asked me how long people spent on a computer each day. Well, it is not unusual for adults and children to be on their computers for six or seven hours every day, and this increase in computer use has brought with it problems related to different parts of our bodies: mainly our eyes, backs, and arms.

One of you said that you had pain in your arms after using a computer. You asked me how long the pain would last. Most of the pain we feel after using our computers are temporary and disappear after a rest or a change of activity.

The most common computer-related problems are headaches and pain in our arms, back and neck. The most serious of these is repetitive strain injury, or RSI, which can lead to permanent damage. Another student wanted to know why he was getting RSI. Problems like this are usually caused by sitting in an unnatural position for long periods of time or having your chair in the wrong position. Perhaps the most important way of preventing these problems is to take regular breaks from your computer: at least five minutes every hour. During these breaks, you should move around or do stretching exercises. You should also make sure your desk or table is the right height and the computer screen at the correct angle. You will also find it helpful to have your feet flat on the floor.

Some of you asked me what you could do to prevent damage to your eyes. If you are a regular computer user, you should have your eyes tested once every two years. To avoid eye problems while you are working, blink regularly and focus on things which are further away than the computer screen. Other actions that you can take include keeping the air in the room moist, for example by using plants or a glass of water. This will stop your eyes from becoming dry. Also change the brightness of your screen from time to time and, of course, keep your screen clean. These are some of the basic rules for avoiding health problems related to computer use. Follow these and you should not experience serious problems.

Reading :

Safety at home

One of the most common causes of personal injury is an accident at home, and the two groups most in danger from these injuries are children under five and adults over seventy.

Recently, a group of people were asked where most accidents took place at home. The **majority** correctly said the kitchen, because this is where most house fires begin. The bathroom is also a danger area, because this is where many older people fall and where some accidents involving **electrical** equipment happen.

When we asked a safety expert what we could do to prevent accidents at home, he came up with some **simple** but useful ideas. He **pointed out**, for example, that we should not leave food cooking in the kitchen. He also recommended a number of other simple things we could do, including turning off and **unplugging** electrical equipment when it was not in use, and not **overloading** electrical **sockets**. He also said that all homes should have smoke alarms.

Finally, we asked him what we should do if a fire started at home. He suggested that all homes should have at least one **fire extinguisher** and that families should work out a fire escape plan in case the worst happened. He also reminded us that throwing water on a fire, for example on a fire caused by electrical equipment, does not always put it out and can make the situation worse. In these cases, a fire blanket is recommended.

If everyone follows this simple advice, the number of serious injuries caused by accidents at home can be reduced.

Definitions

angle	the position from which something is viewed
blink	shut and open your eyes quickly
brightness	the quality of light given or reflected by an object.
flat (adj)	describe something that's level , smooth and even.
height	the measurement from the bottom to the top of an object .
moist	describe something that's slightly wet , damp and humid.
permanent	describe something that's intended to last or continue forever
position	the location of an object
electrical	using or to do with electricity
fire extinguisher	a piece of equipment used for stopping / putting out small fires
majority	the most of the people in the group
overload	put too much electricity through something.
point out	tell someone something
simple	describe something that's easy to do or easy to understand
unplug	to disconnect a piece of electrical equipment out of a socket

socket	a place in a wall where you can connect equipment to the supply of electricity

Language Notes

The phrasal verb "Come"

come up with = offer / propose يخرج بـ - يعرض - يفكر في - يبتكر - يخترع
- The best authors are always very good at coming up with new ideas.

come out : يخرج - يصدر - يظهر
- Do you know when the new James Bond film is coming out?
- If news of the marriage comes out, he will be in trouble.

come round : wake up after an operation or illness يستعيد الوعي
- Mona came round slowly after the accident, but she's fine now.

- فاعل + (have) + مفعول + pp يسمى هذا البناء الاستخدام السببي
- Adel had his eyes tested in hospital

الفاعل في مثل هذه الجمل هو المتسبب في الحدث فقط أما الفاعل الحقيقي غير موجود في الجملة.

- We're having our house painted this weekend.
- My washing machine is broken; I need to have it repaired.

- Thank for يشكر علي - Thank you for your help .
Thanks to بفضل - Thanks to Allah الحمد لله, I succeeded.

- involve يتضمن - Some accidents involving electrical equipment can happen.
Involve يورط - I am afraid ! your brother is involved in the crime.

- point out يبين **- point to** يشير الي (بأدب) **- point at** يشير الي (بوقاحة)

- put out = extinguish يطفيء **- put off =** postpone يؤجل
put on weight = gain weight يزيد وزن

Language Functions

Persuading

Making Persuasion			Responding to Persuasion
Go on. Hazim.			Oh , you have persuaded me
You are not going to let me down.			That's a good idea. That sounds fine.
Come on it is a great film. You will love it.			Personally, I'd prefer.. (Disagreeing)
I'd say …?	Let's say …	Let's …	Sorry, I don't agree. (Disagreeing)

✍ ***Choose the correct answer:***

1- We use fire ………………. for stopping small fires.

a) extinguisher b) distinguish c) alarm d) fighter

2- If you ………………. electrical equipment , it stops working.

a) turn up b) unplug c) plug d) turn on

3- There is a tree in our garden which is growing at a very strange ………………. .

a) angel b) angles c) angels d) angle

4- There are no hills or mountains, so the road is very ………………….

a) ups and downs b) flat c) bumpy d) curved

5- The bridge over the river is not ……………….. . It will not be there next year.

a) temporary b) temporarily c) contemporary d) permanent

6- Can you change the ……………….. on the television. It is very dark.

a) brightness b) lightning c) bright d) plight

7- Plants grow better in soil which is ……………….. .

a) most b) moist c) dry d) drought

8- The ……………. of mount Sinai is 2.285 metres above sea level.

a) tall b) width c) length d) height

9- I must move because I am sitting in an uncomfortable …………………… .

a) post b) disposition c) position d) composition

10- If you get something in your eye, you should ………………. quickly.

a) blink b) drink c) wake d) prick

11- A ………. is the place in a wall where you can connect electrical equipment.

a) socket b) rocket c) locket d) bucket

12- To point something ....…. is to tell someone something they didn't know or see.

a) on b) out c) at d) to

13- It can be very dangerous to ………………. a socket.

a) download b) upload c) load d) overload

14- The ………………. of a group is most of the people in it.

a) major b) majority c) minority d) minor

15- Something that is …………...……. is not difficult.

a) sample b) hard c) simple d) facilitate

16- Omar came …………………. a good suggestion for what to get Nabil.

a) up with b) out c) round d) on

17- A new novel I want to read comes ...………………. next week.

a) up with b) out c) round d) on

18- The best authors are always very good at coming …………. with good ideas.

a) up b) out c) round d) on

19- Mona came ………………. slowly after the accident , but she is fine now.

a) up with b) out c) round d) on

20- Why is …………….. strain injury a serious problem?

a) repetition b) repeated c) repetitive d) repeat

21- In pairs, ………………. turns to say these sentences .
a) take **b) leave** **c) get** **d) put**
22- ………….……. is the weather usually like when the sea is flat?
a) Which **b) What** **c) How** **d) Why**
23- We all use computers as part of our ………………. life.
a) every day **b) everyday** **c) every year** **d) every month**
24- Many of you asked me how long people spent ..……….. a computer each day.
a) in **b) on** **c) at** **d) of**
25- This increase …………….….. computer use has brought with it problems.
a) in **b) on** **c) at** **d) of**
26- Computers cause problems related ………………..…. our bodies.
a) for **b) with** **c) to** **d) of**
27- Most pains after using computers are ……..…………..and disappear after a rest.
a) temporary **b) permanent** **c) lasting** **d) for ever**
28- The most ………….. computer – related problems are headaches and pain.
a) commonest **b) common** **c) rarely** **d) rare**
29- To prevent these problems is to take regular ……..………….. .
a) medicine **b) brakes** **c) breaks** **d) breaking**
30- During these breaks, you should …………….…. stretching exercises.
a) do **b) make** **c) doing** **d) giving**
31- Make sure your desk or table is the right …………………. .
a) high **b) height** **c) highly** **d) highness**
32- Make sure your computer screen is at the correct …..……………. .
a) ruler **b) flat** **c) angle** **d) triangle**
33- You will also find it helpful to have your feet ………………. on the floor.
a) lean **b) far** **c) forward** **d) flat**
34- You should have your eyes ………………. every two years.
a) test **b) tested** **c) testing** **d) tests**
35- To avoid eye problems while you ………….. working, blink regularly.
a) are **b) were** **c) was** **d) is**
36- Keep the air in the room ………………… by using plants or a glass of water.
a) moist **b) moisture** **c) dampness** **d) dry**
37- Change the ………………. of your screen from time to time.
a) bright **b) brightness** **c) colour** **d) sound**
38- I will speak to you about using computers without ………………. your health.
a) damaging **b) damage** **c) damaged** **d) damages**
39- One of the most common ………….. of personal injury is an accident at home.
a) causes **b) cause** **c) reasons** **d) reason**
40- Where do most accidents take …………………. at home ?
a) part **b) happen** **c) palace** **d) place**

41-The bathroom is a danger area, because it is ………… many older people fall.

a) which b) when c) where d) what

42- The safety expert said that all homes should have smoke ………………… .

a) fires b) alarms c) arms d) fighters

43- He suggested that all homes …………….. at least one fire extinguisher.

a) has b) have had c) are having d) should have

44- Throwing water on an electrical fire can make the situation ....

a) worse b) better c) best d) good

45- The debate focused ……………….. three main problems.

a) in b) on c) at d) of

46- Don't use water if there is a fire in .... equipment.

a) extinguisher b) economy c) education d) electrical

47- More than half the people means the .... of people.

a) majority b) minority c) fewest d) least

48- On explaining the reading passage , you should .... out the grammar points.

a) look b) point c) take d) turn

49- Without the remote control , I couldn't adjust the …………… of the TV screen.

a) brightness b) lightnig c) position d) delight

50- How many .... does the triangle have?

a) engines b) angels c) genes d) angles

51- When will your favourite writer's novel ……………………… ?

a) publish b) had been published c) come out d) come up

52- After graduation, I hope I will find a .... job and live a quiet life.

a) bad b) temporary c) permanently d) permanent

53- The early farmers used .... machines to help them grow crops in fields.

a) simple b) modern c) automated d) automatic

54- .... tall are you? I am 1.89 metres tall.

a) What b) Who c) How d) When

55- The quality of light given or reflected by an object is called ....

a) brightness b) lightning c) light d) lightness

56- If something is slightly wet, damp or humid, it is ....

a) drought b) dry c) moisture d) moist

57- Be careful not to .... that socket. You are using it for two many things.

a) overload b) download c) upload d) load

58- The .... of the students come to schoolboy bus. Only two come by train.

a) minor b) major c) minority d) majority

59- It took the player five minutes to come .... when he fell to the ground.

a) out b) over c) round d) up

60- In case of following this advice, home accidents can be ....

a) increased b) decreased c) doubled d) spread

2) Reported Questions السؤال غير المباشر

said / said to ⟶ asked:

♦ **في حالة الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ yes/ no نستخدم if / whether كأداة ربط و يأتي بعدها الفاعل ثم الفعل : (نستخدم whether فقط مع or not).**

- She said, " Do you speak French?" = She asked **if** I spoke French.
- He said, "Have you ever been abroad?" = He wondered **if** I had ever ……. .

♦ **في حالة الأسئلة التي تبدأ بأداة استفهام ، نستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كأداة ربط و يأتي بعدها الفاعل ثم الفعل :**

- He said, "Where did you spend your summer holiday?"
  = He wanted to know **where** I had spent my summer holiday.
- He said, "What are you doing now?" = He asked **what** I was doing then.

♦ **لاحظ حذف الكلمات do/does/did عند تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر:**

♦ **تتغير الأزمنة فقط إذا بدأ السؤال بفعل في الماضي :**

-" How much do you earn?" = He **wonders** how much I **earn**.
- "How much do you earn?" = He **wondered** how much I **earned**.

♣ **في حالة تحويل سؤالين إلى غير مباشر نستخدم and if أو أداة استفهام + and:**

- He said, " Why are you late? Did you miss the bus?"
  He wondered why I was late **and if** I had missed the bus.
- He said, "Where did you buy it. How much did it cost you?"
  He wanted to know where I had bought it **and how** much it had cost me.

♦ **في حالة العرض offer:**

- He said, "Shall I get you some tea?" = He asked if he ***could*** get me some tea.
  He **offered** me some tea. / He **offered to** get me some tea.

♦ **في حالة الطلب request:**

- He said, "Could you open the window, please?"
  He **asked** me **to** open the window.

♣ ويمكن تحويل السؤال إلى غير المباشر باستخدام إحدى العبارات الآتيــة :

Present	Past
I'd like to know	I inquired
I want to know	I wanted to know
I wonder	I wondered
I don't know	I had no idea
I ask	I asked
Can / Could you tell me…?	I didn't know

♦ لاحظ عدم استخدام ضمير مفعول بعد wondered / inquired .

Choose the correct answer :

1- He asked me why ………………… to work abroad.

a) I want　　b) I wanted　　c) do I want　　d) did I want

2- They asked me if my parents ………………… I was there.

a) know　　b) are knowing　　c) have known　　d) knew

3- Nabil asked Yasser ………………… he was doing.

a) what　　b) when　　c) how　　d) where

4- She asked me ………………… the bag for her.

a) carrying　　b) to carry　　c) carry　　d) carried

5- He asked me …………………… I had a driving licence.

a) whether　　b) what　　c) how many　　d) how high

6- She asked me ………………… I could tell her how old I was.

a) how　　b) when　　c) why　　d) whether

7- They want to know who ………………… the match.

a) did win　　b) won　　c) do win　　d) does win

8- She asked me which university ………………… .

a) had I been to　　b) go I to　　c) did I go to　　d) I had been to

9- She asked him ………………… he was going out with.

a) which　　b) what　　c) whether　　d) who

10- She asked me whether my uncle ………… I was trying to find another job.

a) know　　b) know　　c) knew　　d) known

11- He asked me why ………………… to work for their company.

a) do I want　　b) had I wanted　　c) did I want　　d) I wanted

12- I wanted to know ………………… she came home early or not.

a) if　　b) why　　c) whether　　d) when

13- She wondered how ………………… about working in a big city.

a) I would feel　　b) did I feel　　c) do I feel　　d) had I felt

14- Rami wanted to know where Mona ………………… 2 days before.

a) is　　b) has been　　c) had been　　d) would be

15- I wondered what ………………….. of my idea.

a) they thought　　b) did they think　　c) had they thought　　d) will they think

16- Warda asked Sara if she she ………………… the bus to school.

a) take　　b) takes　　c) has taken　　d) took

17- Tarek asked who Mazin ………………….. playing football with.

a) had　　b) had been　　c) has been　　d) is

18- I asked him what …………………… then.

a) was he reading　　b) had he read　　c) he had read　　d) he was reading

19- He asked me if …………………. a new car the previous month.

a) do I buy　　b) did I buy　　c) I would buy　　d) I had bought

20- He asked me if I knew that his sister …………………… ill.

a) is　　b) has been　　c) had been　　d) will be

21- She asked me, "………………… the DVD?"

a) Have you watched **b) You have watched**
c) You're watching **d) Are You watch**

22- He wanted to know how much …………………… for my car.

a) I pay **b) I have paid** **c) had I paid** **d) I had paid**

23- Farouk asked Osman why ……….............…… late.

a) was he **b) are you** **c) is he** **d) he was**

24- The teacher said, " Where …………………, Hazim ?"

a) your book is **b) your books were** **c) the books are** **d) is your book**

25- Karim ………………… Nour if there was sugar in the cup.

a) asked **b) told** **c) said** **d) talked**

26- Samy asked Alaa where ………………… that precious stone.

a) had she found **b) she had found** **c) did she find** **d) she found**

27- They wanted to know ………………… music.

a) if I played **b) did I play** **c) do I play** **d) that I play**

28- She wondered ………………… there was anything interesting at the weekend.

a) if **b) where** **c) when** **d) that**

29- He asked me ……………… I had written my report or not.

a) whether **b) weather** **c) if** **d) had**

30- Samia asked Hala ……………………. she was doing anything the next day.

a) unless **b) whether** **c) without** **d) except**

31- The teacher asked Ahmed …………………… all the way on foot.

a) why he came **b) if did he come** **c) how would he come** **d) if does he come**

32- Ahmed asked me where …………………… the day before.

a) I had gone **b) I went** **c) had I gone** **d) did I go**

33- Mahmoud promised he would not tell anyone what ……………… done.

a) had I **b) I had** **c) have I** **d) I have**

34- Taha's mother asked him where ………………….. .

a) he had been **b) had he been** **c) has he been** **d) he has been**

35- Do you know what …………………….. .

a) does this mean? **b) this means?** **c) this means.** **d) this meant?**

36- Tarek's mother asked him what time he .... home from school.

a) is **b) will be** **c) would be** **d) being**

37- The students asked the teacher what they .... to help stop global warming.

a) do **b) can do** **c) did** **d) could do**

38- Our science teacher told us that metals .... by heating.

a) expand **b) expanded** **c) would expand** **d) will expand**

39- Ahmed said that if the train ………………….. down, he wouldn't be late.

a) didn't break **b) doesn't break** **c) hadn't broken** **d) won't break**

40- I wanted to know how old ....

a) are you b) is she c) was she d) she was

41- My father .... that he would buy me a new mobile.

a) told b) asked c) promised d) complained

42- The doctor advised my friend .... smoke to keep his health.

a) to b) not to c) don't d) that

43- My brother .... to Englad the previous week.

a) travelled b) would travel c) had travelled d) was travelling

44- She asked her friend if she .... revising for the exam then.

a) had been b) was c) had d) was being

45- He .... if we could help him with his homework.

a) wondered b) wandered c) wounded d) widowed

46- Warda asked Sara how she usually .... to school.

a) gets b) get c) is getting d) got

47- "What .... doing this evening?" Hamid's mother said to him.

a) were you b) you were c) are you d) you are

48- Tarek wanted to know .... Mazin had been playing football with.

a) what b) where c) who d) if

49- Zeinab's parents .... to know what she has done at school today.

a) wants b) want c) wanted d) had wanted

50- She asked him what .... been doing since he left school.

a) he had b) he has c) had he d) has he

51- She wanted to know what ………………….. .

a) was the capital of Egypt b) the capital of Egypt was
c) is the capital of Egypt d) the capital of Egypt is

52- He asked me why I hadn't locked the door the ………………….. .

a) night before b) then c) next night d) night after

53- He asked me whether I ………………….. I would enjoy working there.

a) was thinking b) thought c) think d) hd thought

54- We had no idea whether he ………………….. the last match or not.

a) won b) was winning c) would win d) had won

55- He inquired where he ………………. find a place to buy a glass of water from.

a) can b) shall c) should d) could

Exercises on Unit 12

2- Read the following passage, and then answer the questions:

In this tour, we will see some of Egypt's most famous sites. Travelling up the Nile, you will see ancient temples and meet friendly local people. We will visit Cairo, the Pyramids of Giza, Luxor and Aswan. You don't need to book hotels because we will arrange all your accommodation. We will also go camping for a night in the desert, so you need to bring a sleeping bag. **It** can be cold at night!

You don't have to bring much money, because all your food and transport is included in the price. However, you might want to buy some souvenirs from the bazaars that we will visit. You will need to bring cool clothes and good shoes (walking around ancient temples can be difficult). You must also have a passport. Please also check our website for **up-to-date** information. We know that you'll return with some amazing memories and a happy face!

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- What does the underlined word **it** refer to?

a) a sleeping bag b) a hotel c) the desert d) all the accommodation

2- What do you think the word ***up-to-date*** means?

a) the newest b) very important c) very interesting d) computer

3- To walk around ancient temples, you need suitable ………………. .

a) food b) clothes c) shoes d) passport

4- This tour is a / an ………………… one.

a) package b) individual c) personal d) solo

B) Answer the following questions :

5- Who is this text written for?

6- Why don't people need to take much money with them on this trip?

7- Do you think that this trip would be good for very old people or very young children? Why / Why not?

8- Do you think that people who go on this trip will enjoy it? Why / Why not?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dreams are necessary. Without dreams, there will be no ambition to chase. There will be no goal to reach. We will all be nothing without dreams. Not having dreams is like chasing a traceless murder. It is like following an invisible shadow. We must know what we want to do and follow that ambition. We can't achieve anything in life without goals, and for these goals, we need to dream.

Most people have dreams. Big ones or small ones. Even the most successful people had dreams and that is what has made them what they are today. Dreaming is essential for a human being. Without dreams, you will lose interest in life and finally hate to live life. You will be bored and tired of the same monotonous routines of your daily life and will not even find interest in the most exciting things. Only with dreams, will you find a purpose to live your life. You will start working hard towards the dream and will never lose interest in life. You will never tire and always be motivated. This is the best way to become successful.

If you don't have a dream, you can never enjoy the ***luxuries*** of life or all that life has to offer. You will never feel that ecstatic feeling of achievement. You will never get pride in what you do and what you have achieved. All these things are necessary for human beings and without these feelings, there is no motivation.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. What will we be without dreams?

a) We will be successful people. b) We will become important people.
c) We will be nothing. d) We will be ambitious people.

2. Everyone needs to .... to achieve their goals?

a) despair b) play c) dream d) travel

3. The word 'luxuries' in the last paragraph means ....

a) cities b) ways of enjoyment c) problems d) predictions

4. What is an ecstatic feeling?

a) It is a sad feeling. b) It is a joyful feeling.
c) It is a cold feeling. d) It is a bad feeling.

B- Answer the following questions:

5. What will happen if we don't have dreams?
6. What is the best way to become successful?
7. Find words in the passage which mean:
a. can't be followed **b. impossible to be seen**
8. Do you have dreams for your future? If so, mention one of them.

3- Write an essay about 180 words about one of the following:

1- Accidents at home 2- The computer

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- Electricity gives us comfort and happiness. The fans that run using it give us cool air. The washing machine and the grinders are very useful to housewives.

2- The television is one of the wonders of modern science. Many useful programs on education, health and agriculture are telecasted. Interesting plays, films and even commercial advertisement are shown at regular intervals.

3- Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast.

4- We have to attract more and more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all available tourist facilities.

B) Translate into English:

1- نحن ندين لآبائنا بالكثير، فهم السعداء عندما نكون أصحاء ومرتاحون ولكنهم يكونون قلقون جداً عندما نعانى من المرض أو الإضطراب.

2- يجب ألا يُعاقب الأطفال بدنياً، فهذا النوع من العقاب له تأثيراً سيئاً على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل، ولكن يجب على الآباء أن يربوا أطفالهم على الأخلاق الحميدة.

3- يموت الكثير من الأفارقة بسبب نقص المياه و الطعام وانتشار الأمراض.

4- لا يستقيم مع الوطنية، أن تكون أصوات البعض صدى لقوى خارجية تجهر بعداء مصر.

5- المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يكرسوا أنفسهم ووقتهم ومالهم من اجل رفاهية أسرهم.

Unit 13: King Solomon's Mines

Vocabulary

battle	معركة	eventually	فى النهاية
reform	اصلاح / يصلح	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
a best-seller	يحقق أعلى نسبة مبيعات	fortunate	محظوظ
oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)	go missing	يصبح مفقود / يضل الطريق
force	قوة / يجبر	oppose / opposing	يعارض / معارض
adviser / advisor	مستشار / ناصح	trap	يحتجز
almost	تقريبا	go on	يستمر فى ...
strange	غريب / شاذ	keen on	حريص على / مهتم بـ
adventure	مغامرة	army	جيش
adventure stories	قصص مغامرات	civilisation	حضارة
adventurer	مغامر	soldiers	جنود
explorer	مستكشف	well-organised	ذات تنظيم جيد
poet / poem	شاعر / قصيدة	behave	يتصرف / يسلك
remote = faraway	بعيد	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف
fantasy land	عالم الأحلام	hunter	صياد / قناص
overcome	يتغلب على	servant	خادم
difficulties	صعوبات	hidden valley	وادى سرى
diamonds	ماس	capture	يأسر / يستولى على
fair / unfair	عادل / ظالم	strangely	بشكل غريب
effective	مؤثر / فعال	powerful	قوى
cruel	قاسى	violent	عنيف
get married	يتزوج	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
gold mines	مناجم الذهب	treasure	كنز
educational system	نظام تعليمى	alive	حى /على قيد الحياة
transport system	نظام المواصلات	exist / gun	يوجد / بندقية
global community	مجتمع عالمى	criminal	مجرم / اجرامى
global society	مجتمع عالمى	relation	علاقة
popularity	شهرة / ذيوع	local	محلى
sales	مبيعات	crew	طاقم طائرة أو سفينة
environmental problems	مشكلات بيئية	rescue	ينقذ
replace	يستبدل / يحل محل	musician	موسيقار
frighten	يخيف	wonder	يتساءل
culture	قافة	tolerant	متسامح
mysterious	غامض	collect	يجمع
customs	عادات / الجمارك	relationship	علاقة ودية

growing opposition	اعتراض متزايد	developed	متطور
new technologies	تقنيات حديثة	unpleasant situation	موقف غير لطيف
position	وضع / مكانة	fight each other	يقاتل بعضهم البعض

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	collect money for	يجمع المال من أجل
have a bath	يأخذ حمام	popular with	محبوب من
give advice about	يقدم نصيحة بشأن	on their way to	فى طريقهم إلى
across the desert	عبر الصحراء	move from … to …	ينتقل من … إلى …
die of thirst	يموت من العطش	search for	يبحث عن
get out of	يخرج من	ask for help	يطلب مساعدة
say goodbye to	يودع	tolerant of	متسامح مع
aware of	على دراية بـ	wait a minute!	انتظر دقيقة
live in isolation	يعيش فى عزلة	send … into	يرسل … إلى
an adviser on	مستشار فى	make a meal	يصنع وجبة
an adviser to	مستشار لـ	make pollution	يسبب تلوث
Be caught in a trap	يقع فى فخ	make him rich	يثريه / يجعله غنيا
Be opposed to	معارض لـ	be against	يكون ضد

General Words

impede = hinder	يعوق	peace treaty	معاهدة سلام
a political party	حزب سياسي	refugees	لاجئين
protest against	يحتج ضد	civilians	مدنيين
public sector	القطاع العام	captives	أسرى
private sector	القطاع الخاص	rebellion	تمرد
overcome obstacles	يتغلب على العقبات	truce	هدنة
freedom of thought	حرية الفكر	high treason	خيانة عظمى

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
violent	fierce	peaceable
fair	just	unfair
mysterious	secretive	clear
challenge	defy	surrender / give up
capture	arrest	release
cruel	harsh / unkind	kind / pleasant / merciful

fortunate	lucky	unfortunate
almost	approximately	wholly
effective	efficient	ineffective
trap	seize / capture	release

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
frighten	fright	frightening
reform	reform (-ation)	reformative
advise	advice	advisable
force	force	forceful
economize	economy	economic
explore	exploration	explorative
detect	detection / detective	detective
enthuse	enthusiasm	enthusiastic
challenge	challenge	challenging
trap	trap	trapped

Spot The Difference

desert	dessert
wonder	wander
search	search for
opposite	opposing
effect	effectiveness
cultural	cultured
capture	captivate
miss	lose
finally	eventually
almost	mostly
like	as
missing	missed
fortunate	lucky
society	community
mysterious	secret
relations	relationships
reform	inform
system	discipline

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Mustafa: Did you know, we're going to read King Solomon's Mines at school soon?

Hany : Yes, I heard. I'm looking forward to that. And for homework we have to find out about Rider Haggard who wrote the book.

Mustafa: What do you know about him?

Hany : Not much. I know he's not alive and I think he was English.

Mustafa: Shall we try and find out more?

Hany : OK. Let's look on the internet. There must be a Rider Haggard website.

Mustafa: Here he is. Rider Haggard, born 1856, died 1925.

Hany : So he's been dead quite a long time. What else does it say?

Mustafa: Well, you were right – he was English – his father was a lawyer and his mother was a poet.

Hany : When did he start writing?

Mustafa: Wait a minute. OK, it says he wasn't very good at school so he didn't apply for university. His father sent him to work in South Africa.

Hany : Did he stay in South Africa?

Mustafa: Yes, for a few years, then he went back to England, married and had a family.

Hany : So, when did he start writing?

Mustafa: Well, let's see. He became a lawyer first, but he didn't do very well because he was so keen on his writing.

Hany : What were his books about?

Mustafa: They were adventure stories which took place in Africa and were about explorers discovering ancient African civilizations or looking for diamonds.

Hany : Was he successful as a writer?

Mustafa: Yes. King Solomon's Mines, which it took him only six weeks to write, was a bestseller for a year.

Hany : What else did he write?

Mustafa: Let's see. She, about an ancient African queen, and Allan Quatermain are his best known other books.

Hany : And did he go on working at the same time as being a writer?

Mustafa: Yes, he worked for the British government He helped in the reform of agriculture. He also travelled around the world.

Hany : I'm interested in learning more about him.

Mustafa: So am I, and I'm really looking forward to reading King Solomon's Mines.

Hany : Me too.

Reading : King Solomon's Mines

An Englishman, Sir Henry Curtis, is in Africa looking for his brother who has **gone missing** while looking for King Solomon's Mines. Alan Quatermain, an adventurer and hunter who has a map of the mines, agrees to help Sir Henry look for his brother. A young African, Umbopa, travels with them as their servant.

When they walk across a desert, the group **almost** die of thirst, but **eventually** reach mountains. They cross the mountains into Kukuanaland, a country in a remote valley. Soldiers from the country's **army** capture Sir Henry's group and are going to kill them, but suddenly become afraid when one of the Englishmen behaves **strangely**. Soon the Kukuanas believe that the men have strange and powerful **forces**.

The Englishmen are taken to King Twala, a cruel, violent man who kills anyone who **opposes** him. To become king, he killed his brother and sent his brother's wife and son Ignosi into the desert to die.

The servant Umbopa now tells the Englishmen that he is really Ignosi. Then, with his own soldiers and his English friends, he attacks the king's army. In the **battle** that follows, Twala is killed. Then, one of the old king's **advisers**, Gagool, takes the group to King Solomon's Mines, where they find rooms full of gold and diamonds. While they are looking at the treasure, Gagool escapes and **traps** the Englishmen in the mine without food or water. **Fortunately**, after a few days, they manage to get out of the mine, taking enough diamonds to make them rich.

The Englishmen say goodbye to the new King Ignosi and start their journey home. On their way, they stop at an **oasis**, where they find Sir Henry's brother.

Definitions

a bestseller	a book that sells in large numbers.		
reform	a change to how we do things to make it fairer or more effective		
go on	continue doing something		
keen on	be enthusiastic about something		
adviser	someone whose job is to give advice about a subject.		
army	a large organisation of soldiers		
battle	a violent fight between two group		
oppose	to disagree with something and try to stop it.		
trap	be in a dangerous place or unpleasant situation and can't escape		
fortunately	describing something happening that's good		
oasis	a place in the desert where there is water and plants grow.		
strange	unusual , surprising or difficult to understand		
eventually	after a long time.	**force**	a natural power
go missing	to become lost.	**almost**	nearly but not completely.

Language Notes

- **almost: nearly** تقريبا - I didn't know it was so late. It's almost 3 o'clock.
- **spend + مدة + v.+ing:** - He used to **spend his free time playing** football.
- **It takes me + مدة + to + inf. :** - It took him two hours to write the essay.
- **look forward to + v.+ing :** - He is looking forward to visiting his aunt.
- **intend to + inf.:** ينوي - Martina **intends to** buy a new mobile.
- **manage to + مصدر:** يتمكن من - He **managed to** do the difficult sum.
- **succeed in + ing -/ اسم:** - He **succeeded in persuading** me to play tennis.
- **most: very** جدا - It was a **most** beautiful morning.
- **What relation is ….to ….?** ما صلة القرابة بين ..و..
  - What **relation is** Ali **to** Ahmed? They are cousins.
- **One of …(is) …** لاحظ الفعل مفرد - **One of** these books **is** very useful.

- لاحظ الفعل المفرد في الجمل التالية :

- **Reading** books **is** a useful hobby. - **Building** houses **costs** a lot of money.

- العبارات الدالة على الثمن والزمن والمسافة يأتى معها الفعل فى صورة المفرد :

- **Two hundred pounds** ***is*** too much for this shirt.
- **Five miles** ***is*** a long way to walk. - **Five hours** ***is*** not enough to do this job.

Language Functions

Asking for help طلب مساعدة	Agreeing to help someone
- Please could you help me to carry this bag?	- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع
- I wonder if you could help me with my homework. .... أتساءل إن كان بامكانك	- Yes, what's the problem? نعم، ما هى المشكلة
- I can't find my camera. I don't suppose you could help me find it لا أعتقد أنك يمكن أن تساعدنى فى العثور عليها	- Yes. What would you like me to do? نعم. ماذا تود منى أن أفعل
- Would it be possible for you to help me with my homework? هل يمكن أن تساعدنى فى حل الواجب؟	- I'd be happy to help. يسعدنى أن أساعدك

Choose the correct answer:

1- After the accident, the man was ………………… in his car for two hours.
a) dragged **b) trapped** **c) gripped** **d) tripped**

2- I didn't have much sleep last night, but …….. I don't have to go to school today.
a) almost **b) unfortunately** **c) fortunately** **d) nearly**

3- My uncle is an ………………….. to the government on the economy.

a) adventurer b) adviser c) explorer d) inventor

4- A lot of people admire the ………………….. of ancient Egypt.

a) nationalization b) civilization c) cultivation d) rationalisation

5- The crew of a small fishing boat has gone ………………….. during a storm.

a) wasting b) spending c) missing d) playing

6- ………….., my brother failed his exam, even though he had worked very hard.

a) Unfortunately b) Fortunate c) Unfortunate d) Fortunately

7- There is growing……………..in Europe to factories that make a lot of pollution.

a) support b) agreement c) consent d) opposition

8- If you visit Egypt, it is ………………. to wear a hat if you go out in the sun.

a) inadvisable b) advisable c) bad d) unhealthy

9- Our football team beat the ………………….. team 3-1.

a) opposed b) opposing c) oppose d) opposition

10- The school wants to ……………. the way that the children study maths.

a) mend b) form c) repair d) reform

11- I am not very …………….. on science fiction. I prefer adventure stories.

a) keen b) keep c) fond d) interested

12- I hope the government goes ……… doing great projects to help our economy.

a) about b) on c) for d) about

13- Gulliver's travels has been a …………..…. since it was first written in 1726.

a) best book b) best novel c) bestseller d) best author

14- In November 1942, the German army lost a big .... in El-Alamin, Egypt.

a) bottle b) button c) battle d) match

15- Ali thought his new school was very .... at first, but he likes it now.

a) stranger b) strangely c) strong d) strange

16- We are ………. to have one of the country's best musicians visiting us today.

a) fortunate b) unfortunate c) luckily d) fortunately

17- I didn't know it was so late. It's ………………….. 3 o'clock.

a) most b) almost c) nearby d) near

18- I think the man in the local shop is ……….. the opening of the new supermarket.

a) composing b) agreeing c) objecting d) opposing

19- A best ……………… is a book that a lot of people have bought.

a) seller b) sell c) selling d) sale

20- He gave me some ………………. about the best study plan.

a) advise b) advisable c) advice d) inadvisable

21- …………………….. is society that is well-organised and developed.

a) Cultivation b) Civilization c) Reform d) Reclamation

22- To …………………. is to change a system to make it fairer or more effective.

a) inform b) deform c) form d) reform

23- An …………… is someone whose job is to give advice about a subject.

a) instructor b) adventurer c) adviser d) organiser

24- If you are ……………….. in a dangerous place, you cannot escape from it.

a) stripped b) trapped c) rested d) tripped

25- ………………. is when two armies fight each other in one place.

a) Battle b) Cattle c) Shuttle d) Race

26- To ……………… is to disagree with or be against.

a) support b) agree c) suppose d) oppose

27- An ………. is someone who travels to places that people have not visited before.

a) adventurer b) explorer c) adviser d) archaeologist

28- The teacher sent him out of the class because of his bad ……………… .

a) behaviour b) reform c) civilization d) behave

29- Rider Haggard spent only six weeks ………………… King Solomon's Mines.

a) to write b) writing c) wrote d) in writing

30- ……… stories often take place in remote places such as Africa or S. America.

a) Adventure b) Architecture c) Imagination d) Science fiction

31- A …………………. is a shop where you can buy books.

a) library b) stationary shop c) playground d) bookshop

32- A goldmine is a mine where you can find ……………….. .

a) diamond b) gold c) silver d) metal

33- A ……………………. is a place where you can catch a bus.

a) train station b) bus stop c) bus garage d) bus driver

34- A ……………. is a footballer who stops the other team scoring goals.

a) striker b) wing c) goalkeeper d) zookeeper

35- A ………………. is an area where school children play during breaks.

a) play station b) playground c) bus stop d) book shop

36- I …………………. if you could help me with my homework.

a) wonder b) wander c) speak d) tell

37- They got lost in the desert and died ……………………. thirst.

a) of b) by c) with d) from

38- Vitamin C is thought to help ……………………… colds and flu.

a) fight b) quarrel c) hit d) win

39- We're …………………….. money for the homeless.

a) wasting b) connecting c) contacting d) collecting

40- She always ………………….. well when her aunts come to visit.

a) behaves b) believes c) works d) makes

41- The lifeboat …………………….. the sailors from the sinking boat.

a) repaired b) improved c) rescued d) provided

42- We …………………….. to go to London next year.

a) attend b) extend c) means d) intend

43- He went to the airport to……….goodbye to his friend who is traveling to America.

a) speak　b) say　c) tall　d) talk

44- A ………………..is a bike with a motor.

a) motorbike　b) tandem　c) car　d) cart

45- Some of the enemy soldiers were ……………….. in the October War.

a) caught　b) arrested　c) got　d) captured

46- Our cat has ……………….. . we haven't seen him for a week.

a) missed　b) come　c) gone missing　d) abandoned

47- The ……………… speaks for people at law courts in order to defend them.

a) teacher　b) lawyer　c) doctor　d) manager

48- Shakespeare was one of England's greatest ………………….. .

a) poets　b) playwrights　c) players　d) servants

49- Ancient Egyptian …………….…….. began around 5000 years ago.

a) organization　b) civilization　c) education　d) instruction

50- The new educational ………….………. mean that children will start learning English when they are five years old.

a) forms　b) deforms　c) from　d) reforms

51- James Bond novels have been ……………..… since they were first written.

a) best-sellers　b) bad-sellers　c) best-sailors　d) bad-sailors

52- He was ………………… and seriously injured by a gang of youth.

a) attached　b) attacked　c) published　d) attracted

53- The traffic was very bad ……………….. the way to work.

a) in　b) on　c) at　d) with

54- He is a cruel man. He isn't ……………… at all.

a) harsh　b) violent　c) kind　d) dangerous

55- The word trap can be used as a verb and a ………………… .

a) adverb　b) noun　c) proverb　d) adjective

56- She's looking forward to ……………… The grandchildren again.

a) see　b) being seen　c) having seen　d) seeing

57- We should all take part in the ……………… against disease and poverty.

a) bittle　b) bottle　c) battle　d) fattle

58- She ……………… missing when she first went to Alexandria.

a) came　b) gone　c) went　d) goes

59- We were all surprised because he behaved ……………… .

a) strange　b) strangely　c) strong　d) strength

60- There is growing ………… in Europe to factories that make a lot of pollution.

a) supposition　b) position　c) opposition　d) profession

Language Focus

Prepositions

- لا توجد قواعد معينة لأى حرف جر يأتى بعد اى اسم او فعل او صفة لذلك نتعلم كل فعل ونحفظه عندما يقابلنا :

- Are you **afraid of** the dark?
- I'm **looking for** my pen.
- What is the **cause of** the fire?
- Ali is **worried about** his exam.
- My sister **arrives at** school on time.
- The **popularity of** Naguib Mahfouz is worldwide.

Noun اسم + Preposition حرف جر

apology for	اعتذار عن	an answer to	حل لـ
reason for	سبب لـ	a solution to	حل لـ
cause of	سبب لـ	a reply to	رد على
advantage of	ميزة كذا	an obstacle to	عائق لـ
problem of	مشكلة كذا	damage to	دمار لـ
problem with	مشكلة فى	increase in	زيادة فى
popularity of	شهرة فلان	decrease in	نقص فى
popularity with	شهرة بين	a supply of	مؤن / إمداد من

Adjective صفة + Preposition حرف جر

brilliant at	رائع فى	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
wonderful at	رائع فى	bored with	يشعر بالملل من
good at	ماهر فى	fed up with	يسئم / يمل من
clever at	ماهر فى	ashamed of	خجلان من
bad at	سيء فى	proud of	فخور بـ
terrible at	فظيع فى	afraid of	خائف من
astonished at	مندهش بـ	frightened of	خائف من
disappointed at	خاب أمله (فى شئ)	terrified of	مرعوب من
well-known for	مشهور بـ	scared of	مرعوب من
famous for	مشهور بـ	worried about	قلق على
responsible for	مسئول عن	excited about	مثار من / فرحان بـ
rude to	وقح مع	happy about	سعيد بـ
angry with	غاضب من (شخص)	sorry about / for	حزين بشأن
annoyed with	متضايق من (شخص)	mad about	مهووس بـ
disappointed with	خاب أمله (فى شخص)	sad about	حزين بشأن
satisfied with	راض / قانع بـ	crazy about	مهووس بـ
pleased with	مسرور من	interested in	مهتم بـ
delighted with	مسرور من	keen on	مغرم بـ / شغوف بـ

Verb فعل + Preposition حرف جر

find out about	يكتشف (عن)	complain to	يشكو لشخص
apply for	يتقدم بطلب (لوظيفة)	complain about	يشكو من
belong to	يخص / ملك	look for	يبحث عن
provide … for	يوفر … لـ	come across	يصادف
work for	يعمل لدى / من أجل	consist of	يتكون من
work on	يعمل فى مشروع أو رواية	go on	يستمر فى
work in	يعمل فى مجال ما	die of	يموت بسبب
escape from	يهرب من	suffer from	يعانى من
blame شخص for شيئ	يلوم … على	crash into	يصطدم بـ
blame شيئ on شخص	يلوم … على	care for / about	يعتنى بـ
hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من	help with	يساعد فى عمل ما
hear of / about	يسمع عن	help in	يساعد فى مجال ما
apologize for	يعتذر عن شيئ	congratulate on	يهنئ على
apologize to	يعتذر الى شخص	concentrate on	يركز على
prevent from	يمنع من	dream of / about	يحلم بـ
protect from / against	يحمى من	depend on	يعتمد على
recover from	يشفى من	rely on	يعتمد على
accuse … of	يتهم … بـ	believe in	يؤمن بـ
charge … with	يتهم … بـ	succeed in	ينجح فى
reply to	يرد على	object to + v+ing	يعترض على
hope for	يأمل فى	result from	ينتج عن
warn about	يحذر من	result in = lead to	يؤدى إلى

✍ **يأتى بعد حرف الجر اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ ing أو ضمير كما فى الأمثلة التالية :**

- He is very worried about **the exam**. - He is very worried about **it**.

✍ **فى حالة نفى الفعل المنتهى بـ ing نضع قبله not :**

- He apologized for **not coming** to my birthday party.

✍ **إذا لم يأتى بعد حرف الجر اسم أو (V.ing) أو ضمير فهو ظرف و ليس حرف جر :**

- He sat **in an arm-chair** and started to read. - Put your books **on the table**.

✍ **أحيانا يأتى حرف الجر فى نهاية الجملة :**

- I know the man you are talking **about**. - Is this what you were thinking **of**?

✍ **أحيانا يكون لحرف الجر أكثر من مكان :**

- Who did you go to town **with**? - **With** whom did you go to town?

✍ *Choose the correct answer:*

1- Nobody knows the real reason for the film's popularity ………………… children.
a) with b) to c) for d) of

2- Huda loves English, but she's not very good ……………….. maths.
a) for b) at c) by d) with

3- When did Azza find ……………….. that she had won the maths prize?
a) from b) out c) of d) about

4- That little black car belongs ………………….. my uncle.
a) to b) for c) with d) by

5- I play lots of sports, but I'm not very keen ……………… watching sport on TV.
a) to b) on c) for d) at

6- When Nihal nishes university, she's going to apply ……………. a job abroad.
a) to b) with c) at d) for

7- In 1918, millions of people all over the world died ………………… Spanish flu.
a) of b) for c) at d) with

8- You weren't at school yesterday, so how did you find out ………. the homework?
a) with b) about c) from d) of

9- Samira is very interested …………… medicine and wants to be a doctor.
a) in b) to c) of d) for

10- William Shakespeare is more famous …………….. his plays than his poems.
a) for b) by c) from d) of

11- My father works ………………. an international oil company.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

12- What was the reason ………..…….. the accident?
a) from b) to c) for d) about

13- There has been an increase ..………… the number of tourists going to Luxor.
a) in b) to c) for d) about

14- Many people are worried ………………. .the problem of climate change.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

15- The earthquake caused damage ……………… many houses.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

16- I hope they gave him an apology …………….. their bad behaviour.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

17- He is brilliant …………………. writing exciting stories.
a) from b) to c) at d) about

18- He is good ………………. writing exciting stories.
a) from b) to c) at d) about

19- He is bad ……………………. writing exciting stories.
a) from b) to c) at d) about

20- I was angry …………….. him for being late.

a) from b) to c) with d) about

21- I was annoyed …………….. him for being late.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

22- I was disappointed ……………. him for being late.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

23- I'm proud ……………. my brother – he has done so well at school.

a) from b) with c) at d) of

24- My little brother is terrified ……………. birds.

a) from b) with c) of d) about

25- Are you excited …………………… going to China?

a) from b) with c) at d) about

26- I'm sorry ……………….. forgetting to phone you.

a) from b) with c) about d) to

27- My brother is going to apply ……………….. a job at the university.

a) from b) for c) at d) about

28- My uncle worked ………….. the Egyptian government.

a) from b) with c) for d) about

29- He helped ……………… the reform of education.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

30- I haven't heard ……………. my brother for two months.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

31- Until I read King Solomon's Mines, I'd never heard…………. Rider Haggard.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

32- I must apologize …………… being late.

a) from b) with c) at d) for

33- Our hotel room was too hot, so we complained ………the hotel manager about it.

a) from b) with c) to d) about

34- Our flat consists ……….. a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom and two bedrooms.

a) from b) of c) at d) about

35- He died ………… heart disease.

a) of b) with c) at d) about

36- He has been suffering ……………….. heart problems for many years.

a) from b) with c) at d) about

37- He crashed ………………. a tree because he was driving too fast.

a) from b) into c) at d) about

38- I'm most interested ……………… languages.

a) from b) with c) at d) in

39- Egypt is most famous ……………… its beautiful Pyramids and ancient cities.

a) from b) with c) for d) about

40- The main cause …………… global warming is the pollution from factories.

a) from b) of c) at d) about

41- Are you happy ………….. going to China?

a) from b) with c) at d) about

42- Although the risk is quite small, many people are afraid ………. Surgery.

a) to b) with c) of d) through

43- The man was taken to court and charged ……. breaking his neighbour's window.

a) about b) of c) with d) at

44- I'm bored ……………. this book. I think I'll read another one.

a) with b) of c) for d) to

45- Monuments should be protected ………… pollution as it eats away stonework.

a) against b) by c) of d) to

46- The king asked the wise chief ……………. advice.

a) to b) for c) with d) at

47- I was delighted …………….. that good news.

a) by b) from c) of d) with

48- I'm working ……………… a science project.

a) in b) at c) on d) with

49- The reason …………….. his failure in the exam was that he didn't study well.

a) at b) from c) of d) for

50- The man they arrested last night has been charged …………….. Murder.

a) about b) of c) with d) at

51- The surgeon operated ……………. the ill man.

a) at b) into c) over d) on

52- We congratulated her ……………… her success.

a) by b) on c) at d) for

53- She is very keen ……………… swimming.

a) in b) on c) of d) about

54- Graduates who apply ……………… this job must be fluent in English.

a) on b) about c) for d) with

55- Are you keen…………………cycling at weekends?

a) for b) in c) out d) on

56- Smokers are aware ………………… the dangers of smoking.

a) about b) with c) of d) by

57- Ali loves English, but he's not very good ………………… maths.

a) at b) in c) with d) on

58- William Shakespeare is more famous ……………. his plays than his poems.

a) for b) by c) from d) of

59- Nobody knows the real reason ……………… the film's popularity.

a) with b) to c) for d) of

60- Azza is very interested ……………… medicine.

a) in **b) to** **c) of** **d) for**

61- I play lots of sports, but I'm not very keen …………… watching sport on TV.

a) to **b) on** **c) for** **d) at**

62- In 1818, millions of people all over the world died …………..… Spanish flu.

a) with **b) at** **c) for** **d) of**

63- When I finish university, I'm going to apply ……………… a job abroad.

a) to **b) with** **c) for** **d) at**

64- I've lost one ……...……….. my school books. Can you help me look for it?

a) from **b) with** **c) for** **d) of**

65- Holidays in Egypt are popular ……………….. all kinds of tourists.

a) to **b) with** **c) for** **d) at**

Exercises on Unit 13

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Gold is a rare metal with a lovely glowing colour. It is easy to be shaped, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft, it can be beaten into very thin sheets and it can also be drawn out into very fine wires. Gold is therefore an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewels.

The ancient Egyptians prized gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious gold objects in their Pharaohs' tombs, and we can see many of ***them*** in the museums today. The Egyptians were very skilful goldsmiths as they could beat gold into sheets.

The gold which is used to make jewellery is usually mixed with other metals. This is not only makes the gold jewellery cheaper, but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore valuable, gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to ………………….. .

a) keep it away from thieves b) change them into money
c) buy jewellery d) beat them into thin sheets

2- What does the underlined pronoun "*them*" refer to?

a) gold objects b) tombs c) pharaohs d) kings

3- The ancient Egyptians were …………… at using and manufacturing gold.

a) folly b) foolish c) stupid d) crafty

4- The word "prized" means ………………. .

a) rewarded b) handed c) valued d) sold

B) Give short answers to the following questions:

5- Why is gold considered an excellent material for making beautiful objects?

6- What makes gold jewellery cheaper and harder?

7- What did the ancient Egyptians do with gold? Why?
8- Do you think that countries are right to keep bars of gold in banks? Why?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The most serious of all problems, which affect us at the moment, is the increasing number of people who actually inhabit this planet. The limited amount of land and land resources will soon be unable to support the huge population if **it** continues to grow at its present rate. In an early survey conducted in 1888, a billion and a half people inhabited the earth. Now, the population exceeds seven billion and is growing fast. Even though the rate of growth has begun to slow down, most experts believe the population size will still pass eight billion during the next 50 years.

This huge increase in population is really due to the spread of the knowledge and practice of what is becoming known as "Death Control" which recognizes the work of the doctors and scientists who now keep alive people who, not very long ago, would have died of a variety of then incurable diseases. Through a wide variety of technological innovations that include farming methods and sanitation, as well as the control of these deadly diseases, we have found ways to reduce the rate at which we die. This represents a tremendous achievement for our species.

Man is constantly destroying the very resources, which keep him alive. He is destroying the balance of nature, which regulates climate and the atmosphere. Man is responsible for many disasters such as wars and pollution. It is everybody's duty to safeguard the future of mankind - not only through population control, but by being more aware of the effect their actions have on nature. Nature is both fragile and powerful. It is very easily destroyed; on the other hand, it can so easily destroy its most aggressive enemy: mankind.

A) Choose the right answer:

1. According to passage, the main cause for death control is ....
a. less wars between countries   b. less natural disasters
c. more hospitals and doctors   d. better control of fatal diseases

2. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
a. birth   b. death   c. enemy   d. population

3. .... can help overcome the problem of overpopulation?
a. Birth control   b. Death control   c. Nature   d. farming methods

4. Controlling deadly diseases has lead to .... population.
a. increasing   b. decreasing   c. cutting   d. reducing

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why will population be a serious problem if it continues to grow at a quick rate?
6. What size will the world population be in 50 years' time according to the text?
7. To safeguard the future of mankind we should do two things, what are they?

8. How is man harming himself unconsciously?

3- Write an essay of 180 words about one of the following:

1- Travelling abroad   2- Adventure stories

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- A policeman has to protect the public from thieves and wicked men. He has to give help to all those who need it, especially to strangers, foreigners and old people.

2- A policeman must be brave and strong so that he can prevent violent people behaving rudely. In a difficulty, the policeman has the right to call upon anybody for help. To refuse to help a policeman is an offence against good citizenship.

3- Global warming is a problem that affects all world countries because it has a very serious effect on the earth's climate.

4- Scientists believe that the main cause of global warming is the pollution from factories and the use of too many cars.

5- Science has rendered valuable services to humanity. Thanks to it, man has been able to reach for the stars and explore other planets.

6- With the introduction of technology into our world, scientists have harnessed this technology to benefit from it in the field of medicine and health.

B) Translate into English:

1- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لكى تشجع أطفالنا على القراءة، فمشروع القراءة للجميع يوفر كتب قيمة لأطفالنا وبأسعار منخفضة.

2- إن أى إنسان يدافع عن نفسه و أرضه ضد أى قوة لا يمكن أن يطلق عليه أنه إرهابي على الاطلاق ولكنه لديه الحق الشرعى فى أن يبذل قصارى جهده لكى يدافعوا عن كيانه ووطنه.

3- ينصح خبراء التعليم بالاستمرار في الاطلاع علي أحدث طرق المعرفة حتى نطور من أنفسنا ونواكب متطلبات العصر.

4- خطت مصر خطوات واسعة في محاصرة الفكر المتطرف والإرهاب الذي أصبح ظاهرة عالمية يجب مجابهتها والقضاء عليها .

5- يعتبر نهر النيل مصدرا للرخاء و الازدهار لمصر و لذلك يجب أن نرشد استهلاكه و نحافظ علي نظافته.

6- ادمان الإنترنت هو نوعاً جديداً من الادمان، يستخدم فيه الشخص الانترنت بشكل مفرط، ويتعارض ذلك مع حياته وم الواجبات التى عليه القيام بها.

7- يُعجب الكثير من الشباب بمحمد صلاح ليس فقط لموهبته وأداءه الرائع ولكن أيضاً لتواضعه وحسن اخلاقه، لذلك يتخذه بعض الشباب قدوة لهم.

Unit 14: Digital Media

Vocabulary

exclude	يستثنى	cassette player	مشغل الكاسيت
exclusion	استثناء	download	يحمل / ينزل من النت
rule	قاعدة	video	فيديو
stick to	يتمسك بـ	irritable	سريع التوتر / الغضب
type	يطبع	more or less	تقريبا
unpleasant	غير سار	chat	دردشة / يدردش
virtual	حقيقى / واقعى	disadvantages	عيوب
DVD	جهاز عرض رقمى	interests	اهتمامات
digital media	وسائل إعلام رقمية	upset	يحبط / مُحْبَط
join a group	ينضم لمجموعة	theatre	مسرح
discussion	مناقشة	thunder	الرعد
online	عبر الانترنت	bring back	يُعِيد
own : possess	يمتلك	channel	قناة
subject	موضوع	replace	يستبدل
actually	فعلا / حقا	college	كلية
polite	مهذب	conversation	محادثة
rude / rudeness	وقح / وقاحة	text message	رسالة نصية
advertise	يعلن عن	popular	شعبي / محبوب
advertisement	إعلان	annoy : bother	يضايق
members	أعضاء	annoying / annoyed	مزعج / متضايق
contact	يتصل	allow / warn	يسمح / يحذر
anyway	علي أي حال	researcher	باحث
instructions	تعليمات	store	يخزن
keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	immediate	فوري
light wind	رياح خفيفة	traditional method	طريقة تقليدية
behave / behaviour	يتصرف / تصرف	confident / confidence	واثق / الثقة
terrible / awful	رهيب / فظيع	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
difference	اختلاف / فارق	wires / waves	أسلاك / أمواج
particular	معين / محدد	branch	فرع
public	عام	pavement	رصيف (للمشاة)
personal details	بيانات شخصية	hole	حفرة
personality	شخصية	fall over	يسقط / يقع
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلي	express	يعبر عن
calm	هادئ	remote	نائي / بعيد
respond	يرد / يجيب	desert area	منطقة صحراوية

abbreviate	يختصر	face	يواجه
abbreviation	اختصار	get to	يصل إلي (بصعوبة)
hold	يمسك	devices	أجهزة
ladder	سلم خشبي	nervous	عصبي / متوتر
care about	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ	injured	مصاب / مجروح

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
via the internet	عبْر الانترنت	make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة
It doesn't matter	لا يهم	There is no doubt	مما لا شك فيه
be rude to	وقح مع	keep ….. brief	يختصر
through messages	من خلال الرسائل	make ….. upset	يضايق / يزعج
break the rules	يخالف القوانين	Be / stay in contact with	يظل علي اتصال بـ
change his mind	يغير رأيه	lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال بـ
for the benefit of	لصالح	be addicted to	مدمن / مهووس بـ
It's not too late	لا زالت الفرصة سانحة	relaxing holiday	أجازة للاستجمام
for the good of	لصالح	Watch out! = Be careful!	احترس
get annoyed easily	يتضايق بسهولة	Mind you don't …… .	احذر ألا ……

General Words

street children	أطفال الشوارع	armed forces	القوات المسلحة
the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة	co-existence	تعايش
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	Vice president	نائب الرئيس
victims	ضحايا	Prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
security council	مجلس الأمن	social affairs	شئون اجتماعية
political rights	حقوق سياسية	objectivism	موضوعية
self-defence	الدفاع عن النفس	Peoples Assembly	مجلس الشعب

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
exclude	dismiss	include
online	connected	offline
public	common	private
polite	well-mannered	rude
pleasant	cheerful	unpleasant
upset	worried	calm / relaxed
helpful	beneficial	helpless

terrible	awful	terrific
more or less	approximately	exactly
patient	persistent	impatient
comfort	relief	discomfort

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
addict	addiction	addicted / addictive
replace	replacement	replaceable
personify	personification	personal
irritate	irritation	irritable / irritated
pave	pavement	paved
annoy	annoyance	annoying
cost	cost	costly
exclude	exclusion	exclusive
disappoint	disappointment	disappointed
advertise	advertisement	advertised
confide	confidence	confident

Spot The Difference

private	special
public	general
device	advice
quiet	quite
sight	site
probably	properly
message	massage
role	rule
write	type
actual	virtual
search	research
addicted	addictive
advertisement	advertising
excluded	exclusive
voice	sound
compare	contrast
college	colleague

pavement	platform
character	personality
hard	hardly

Read the following carefully

Listening : A Social Networking Site

Taha: Hi, Imad. Could I ask your advice about something?
Imad: Sure, how can I help?
Taha: Well, I've just joined an online discussion group and I'm not sure what the rules are.
Imad: What's the subject of the group? **Taha**: Birds.
Imad: Actually, it doesn't really matter what the subject is. If you join any discussion group, the rules are more or less the same. Probably the most important rule is that you must always be polite. You can disagree with other people, but you must not be rude or unpleasant to them.
Taha: That's the same as when you're actually with people. If I was with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.
Imad: Yes, of course. Another rule is that you shouldn't try to advertise or sell things to members of the group.
Taha: That's OK. I've got nothing to sell. If I contact the group, I'll only tell people about birds that I've seen, or ask them questions about birds.
Imad: What else? Remember to type carefully and don't write long messages. What language does the group use?
Taha: It's an international group, so we use English.
Imad: Another thing to remember is that your messages are public, which means that anyone can read them: your family, your friends, even your teacher.
Taha: Oh yes, I hadn't thought about that.
Imad: Yes, you must be careful not to make anyone upset. And another thing: you should always stick to the subject.
Taha: That's OK; I only want to write about birds.
Imad: There's probably a Help page where you can ask other members questions if you aren't sure about anything. And if you write anything that you shouldn't, the owner of the group may email you to remind you about the rules.
Taha: I didn't realise that discussion groups had owners.
Imad: Most of them do. It can be quite an important job if it's a busy group and there are a lot of members. Sometimes they exclude people from the group if they break the rules.
Imad: I'm sure that I won't break any rules. But anyway, thanks a lot, that's really helpful advice.
Taha: That's OK. If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I

would have joined too. I love birds!
Imad: It's not too late. You can join now!

Reading : Young People and Technology

If you had asked young people 20 years ago how they spent their free time, they would probably have said that they watched television and **videos**, listened to music on **cassette players** or spent time with their friends.

If you asked the same question today, the answers would be very different. Although we still watch television, there are many more channels than there were in the past, and **DVD**s have replaced videos. We now listen to CDs, but more of us are **downloading** music and films from the internet. We can listen to or watch these on computers or mobile phones.

Of course, we still spend time with our friends, but more of our conversations with them are by text message or through online social networking sites like Facebook and Twitter. These are becoming more popular as ways of communicating with friends and of making new friends. Some people are spending more time **chatting** to their virtual friends than to their real friends.

There is no doubt that modern technology allows us to communicate with many more people than we could in the past, but there are **disadvantages**. Researchers have found that some people are **losing touch with** their real friends and becoming addicted to their mobile phones, to their computers and to social networking sites. If they cannot use their phones and computers, some people become nervous and **irritable**. And if more people become addicted to their phones, they will find it hard to make real friends.

Definitions

<table>
<tr><td>exclude</td><td colspan="3">stop someone going to a place or taking part in something.</td></tr>
<tr><td>rule</td><td colspan="3">an instruction that says what you can and can't do.</td></tr>
<tr><td>stick to</td><td colspan="3">not change what you're doing or what you've decided to do.</td></tr>
<tr><td>type</td><td colspan="3">write using a keyboard.</td></tr>
<tr><td>unpleasant</td><td colspan="3">describe something that causes unhappiness or discomfort.</td></tr>
<tr><td>videos</td><td colspan="3">a tape of a film or television programme</td></tr>
<tr><td>cassette player</td><td colspan="3">a machine that plays music on a cassette</td></tr>
<tr><td>DVDs</td><td colspan="3">a digital video disc that can store enough information or a film</td></tr>
<tr><td>download</td><td colspan="3">moving information from a computer to another via the internet</td></tr>
<tr><td>lose touch with</td><td colspan="3">no longer speaking or writing to someone</td></tr>
<tr><td>virtual</td><td colspan="3">not real , only produced on a computer</td></tr>
<tr><td>chat</td><td>talk in a friendly way</td><td>disadvantages</td><td>bad points</td></tr>
<tr><td>more or less</td><td>about , approximately</td><td>irritable</td><td>easily annoyed or angry</td></tr>
</table>

Language Notes

ABREVIATIONS اختصارات

- **DVD** : digital video disc — قرص رقمي متعدد الاستعمالات
- **PC** : personal computer — جهاز كمبيوتر شخصي
- **CD** : compact disc — قرص مضغوط
- **www** : world wide web — شبكة الانترنت
- **IT** : Information Technology — تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- **ID** : Identification — بطاقة الهوية
- **BCE** : before the common era — **BC** : before Christ — قبل الميلاد
- **CE** : Common Era — **AD** : Anno Domini — بعد الميلاد

- **contact** يتصل بـ - You should contact your doctor if you get a fever.
- **connect** يوصل - Is this computer connected? I need to check my email.
- **connect** يربط - The Internet connects people all over the world.

- **message** رسالة - I can't believe how many messages I get in my email.
- **massage** يدلك - He needed a massage after all of this stress.

- **channel** قناة - I saw the news on Channel Five.
- **channel** مجري مائي - The river flows through two channels to the sea.
- **canal = waterway** مجري مائي - The Suez Canal connects two seas.

- **ask** يسأل - Can I ask a question?
- **ask about** يسأل عن - He asked her about her job.
- **ask for** يطلب - My mother asked us for help.

- **similar to** مشابه لـ - You shirt is similar to mine but they are different in colour.
- **the same as** نفس الشيء - Your book is the same as mine. There's no difference.

- **replace** يحل محل - DVDs have replaced videos.
- **replace** يستبدل - The injured player should be replaced immediately.

- **Allow + object + to + infinitive** - **communicate with (people)**
- Modern technology allows us to communicate with many people.

- نستخدم الظرف فى اول الجملة كمقدمة لجذب الانتباه :
- **Actually / Personally**, I don't like watching violence films.

Language Functions

Giving warning إعطاء تحذير	
Be careful (the chair is broken).	Don’t do that.

If I were you, I wouldn't (cross the road).	Make sure you aren't (rude to others).
Mind you don't (touch these wires).	Watch out.

Choose the correct answer from:

1- At the meeting, they decided to ………… the factory to a company from China.
a) sale b) sell c) buy d) import

2- Children should always be …………… to other people, especially older people.
a) impolite b) rude c) polite d) politely

3- The weather was .... yesterday. There was a light wind and it wasn't too hot.
a) unpleasant b) worse c) bad d) pleasant

4- People shouldn't make too much noise in …………….. places.
a) public b) dirty c) nasty d) police

5- Schools sometimes …………………. pupils who behave very badly.
a) include b) contain c) exclude d) welcome

6- Terrible and awful have ………………… the same meaning.
a) more and more b) less and less c) less and more d) more or less

7- A DVD is something which you can ……………….. .
a) listen b) wear c) watch d) play with

8- If you are …….………… to something, you can't stop doing it.
a) addicted b) dictated c) objected d) rejected

9- People download pictures and music from …………………… .
a) a shop b) the internet c) a camera d) their friends

10- In the past, people used to listen to music on …………………. .
a) emails b) cassette players c) channels d) text messages

11- An irritable person …………………. .
a) is always patient b) gets annoyed easily
c) is always calm d) is good at sport

12- If you ………………….. with someone, you talk to them.
a) eat b) cheat c) chat d) chalk

13- If you lose touch with someone, you don't …………………… .
a) speak or write to them b) forget them c)contact them d) know them

14- If you ……………….. something, you make it possible.
a) prevent b) stop c) allow d) kill

15- The disadvantages of something are its ……………………. .
a) good points b) bad points c) interesting points d) merits

16- The most important ………………… is that you must always be polite.
a) rule b) roll c) role d) roller

17- This report is very important. Remember to …………………… it very carefully.
a) glue b) stick c) type d) fix

18- You should always …………………. to the subject you are discussing.
a) stick b) talk c) addict d) lie

19- People won't ………………….. you if you follow the rules.

a) honour b) respect c) exclude d) include

20- To reduce pollution, people should use public transport instead of their ….… cars.

a) public b) private c) person d) special

21- Don't be ………………. to other people. You should be polite.

a) polite b) rude c) polite d) politely

22- Your shirt is more or less the same as mine.There's a small …….. between them.

a) difference b) similar c) differ d) different

23- I don't like this sound. It is …………………… .

a) pleasant b) unpleasant c) great d) nice

24- Try to …………………… the weak students in the lesson to benefit.

a) include b) exclude c) delude d) deduce

25- I've just joined an online discussion group and I'm not sure what the ….…. are.

a) roles b) rulers c) rollers d) rules

26- ……………. , it doesn't matter what the subject is.

a) Factual b) Intellictual c) Actually d) Actual

27- If you join any discussion group, the rules are more ………….. less the same.

a) and b) or c) so d) ore

28- You can ….… with other people but you mustn't be rude or unpleasant to them.

a) disagree b) agree c) approve d) agreeing

29- I will never be rude ……………….. other people.

a) about b) in c) to d) for

30- Please , ……………….. this letter on your computer and print it for me.

a) write b) reads c) type d) typing

31- You must be careful not to make anyone ……………….. .

a) upset b) anger c) annoyance d) happiness

32- When you write a paragraph, you must stick ……………….. the subject.

a) of b) for c) too d) to

33- DVDs have replaced ……………………. .

a) TV b) radios c) videos d) computers

34- Most of our conversations with our friends are by text …………………… .

a) messages b) massage c) letters d) books

35- Facebook and Twitter are social networking ………………… .

a) emails b) location c) sites d) address

36- Facebook and Twitter are becoming more popular as ways of …… with friends.

a) coming b) getting c) reaching d) communicating

37- If we can't use our phones and computers, we become nervous and ……..…. .

a) irritable b) terrible c) trouble d) tender

38- If people become addicted to phones, they'll find it hard to ……… real friends.

a) do b) make c) recognise d) form

39- Some people spend more time …………… with their internet friends.

a) chat b) chatting c) to chat d) chatted

40- Modern technology allows us ……… with many more people than in the past.

a) to communicate b) communicating c) communicate d) communicated

41- Researchers found that some people are losing ……..…. with their real friends.

a) catch b) matches c) touch d) torch

42- The young people are becoming addicted ……………….. their mobile phones.

a) too b) with c) on d) to

43- I'll send you a text ………………. as soon as I have the news.

a) massage b) message c) messaging d) book

44- this is a ……………… phone. Everyone can use it.

a) public b) private c) general d) special

45- This shop ………………. cosmetics at a reasonable prices.

a) buys b) selects c) seems d) sells

46- We should follow traffic ………….. in order not to be fined

a) role b) rules c) rows d) queues

47- While waiting for the train to leave, the passengers …………….. to each other.

a) said b) chatted c) told d) conversation

48- The sales assistant should be…………… to his customers.

a) rude b) polite c) impolite d) rudely

49- The internet helps me to ………………. my favourite singer's songs.

a) downstairs b) overload c) download d) loaded

50- The teacher showed us a ………. about Gulliver's travels in the computer lab.

a) DVD b) radio c) cassette d) internet

51- You should keep quiet while reading in the ……………. library.

a) private b) special c) public d) generally

52- Her job …………….. answering the telephone and writing to new customers.

a) consists b) promotes c) includes d) contains

53- He should be sent to a good hospital because he becomes …………….. .

a) addiction b) addict c) addicted d) addicting

54- He will be …………….. from the team because of his bad injury.

a) included b) excluded c) joined d) praised

55- Don't ask your father for money because he gets ………………. quickly.

a) irrigate b) irregular c) irritable d) irritating

56- The Facebook helps people to make ……………. friends instead of real ones.

a) virtual b) actual c) factual d) true

57- The referee is responsible for applying the ………………. in football.

a) ropes b) roles c) rules d) rolls

58- People are ……..……. together on the train.They talk about different subjects.

a) shitting b) cheating c) chating d) shutting

Language Focus

Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

✍ نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لوصف أحداث تكون دائما حقيقية كعادة دائمة أو حقيقة ثابتة او نشاط يومى . و فى هذه الجمل نلاحظ أن when = if:

If + present simple مضارع بسيط ⟶ present simple مضارع بسيط

- If water is heated to 100° c, it boils.
- If water freezes, it turns into ice.
- If I have time, I usually walk to school.
- If I feel tired, I go to bed early.

The First Conditional الحالة الأولى

If / When + مضارع بسيط ⟶ will / shall + inf.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن أحداث محتملة او ممكنة فى المستقبل.

  - **If** I **earn** some money, I'**ll go** abroad.

- كما تعبر الحالة الأولى عن احتمال حقيقى فى المضارع.

  - **If** you'**re** hot, I'**ll buy** you a cool drink.

- يمكن استخدام **can / may / must / should** بدلاً من **will**.

  - **If** we **have** enough time, we **can visit** Ahmed.

- يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط أمر أو طلب.

  - **If** you **see** Asmaa, **give** her this message, please.

✍ لاحظ صيغة السؤال مع **if**.

  - **What will you do** if you **win** a lot of money?

- يمكن أن نستخدم **should** بدلاً من **if** و يليها فاعل ثم مصدر.

Should + فاعل + مصدر , ... will + مصدر

  - **If he has** enough money, he **will buy** a car.
  - = **Should he have** enough money, he **will buy** a car.

The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

If + ماضى بسيط ⟶ would / could / might + inf.

- تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث من غير المحتمل أن يحدث فى الحاضر أو المستقبل :

  - **If** I **had** a lot of money, I'**d travel** round the world.
  - **If** I **didn't feel** so tired, I'**d come** out with you.
  - **If** he really **liked** you, he **wouldn't be** so horrible to you.

- **كما تعبر عن حالة وهمية او افتراض مخالف للواقع :**

- **If** I **was/were** rich, **I'd buy** my parents a house with a garden.

- **لاحظ استخدام were مع المفرد للدلالة على الاستحالة.**
- **تستخدم الحالة الثانية If I were you للنصيحة.**

- You should look for another job.= **If** I **were** you, I'**d look** for another job.

- **يمكن استخدام were بدلا من if مع ملاحظة أن were هى فعل الجملة الأساسى.**

Were + فاعل + مكملات , ... would + مصدر

- If I were younger, I'd play football with you.
= Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

- **إذا كان فعل الجملة فعل آخر غير were نستخدم were ثم الفاعل ثم to + inf.**

Were + فاعل + to + مصدر , ... would + مصدر

- If it rained, the match would be postponed.
= Were it to rain, the match would be postponed.

- **يمكن أن نستخدم had بدلا من if ويليها فاعل ثم أسم.**

Had + فاعل + أسم مملوك , ... would + مصدر

- If he had enough time, he would go to the club.
= **Had** he enough time, he **would go** to the club.

- **يمكن استخدام should بدلا من if و يليها فاعل ثم مصدر.**

Should + فاعل + مصدر , ... would + مصدر

- **If he played** well, he would win. = **Should he play** well, he would win.

- **لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام مع if فى الحالة الثانية.**

- **What would you do** if you won a lot of money?

The third conditional الحالة الثالثة

If + ماضى تام ⟶ would/could/might/should +have +p.p.

- **تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن مواقف لم تحدث فى الماضى او حدث ومستحيل تغييرها :**

- **If** the sky **had been** clear yesterday, I **would have seen** the eclipse.
- **If** you **hadn't missed** the bus, you **wouldn't have been** late for the match.

- **يمكن استخدام could / might بدلا من would :**

- **If** you **had taken** the exam, you **might have passed** it.
- **If** I **had had** protective glasses, I **could have watched** the eclipse.

- **لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام مع if.**

- **What would you have done** if you **had won** a lot of money?

- **يمكن أن نستخدم had بدلا من if و يليها فاعل ثم تصريف ثالث.**

Had + فاعل + P.P ...... , ... would have + P.P

- **If he had played** well, he would have won.
= **Had he played** well, he would have won.

✍ ملاحظات :

• تنطبق حالات **if** الثلاثة على **unless = except if** و لكنها تنفى الجملة:

- If Peter doesn't improve, he will fail the exam.
 = Unless Peter **improves**, he will fail the exam.

• لاحظ الفرق بين **in case / in case of** فى الاستخدام:

In case لربما + جملة
In case of فى حالة + v. + ing / noun اسم

- If he has enough money, he will buy a car.
 = **In case of having** enough money, he will buy a car.
 = **In case he has** enough money, he will buy a car.

• لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

But for/ Without + v. + ing/ noun	⟶	would + inf. / would have + pp
If it weren't for + v. + ing / noun	⟶	would + inf.
If it hadn't been for + v. + ing / noun	⟶	would have + pp

- But for the Nile, Egypt **would be** a desert.
 = **If it weren't for the Nile**, Egypt **would be** a desert.
- Without his hard work, he **wouldn't have succeeded**.
 = **If it hadn't been for his hard work**, he **wouldn't have succeeded**.

♦ هناك أدوات شرط تستخدم محل **If** بدون تغيير :

as long as طالما/ **on condition that** بشرط أن / **provided that /providing** بشرط أن

- You **can stay** with us **as long as** you share the rent.
- I'**d lend** you the money **on condition that** you **returned** it within 6 months.
- She **would have passed** her exams **provided that** she **had studied** hard.

♦ ملحوظة هامة جداً: عند الاختيار يجب أن تختار **If** فى :

1- الحالة الصفرية اذا كانت الجملة تدل على حقيقة أو عُرف سائد أو عادة متكررة.
2- الحالة الاولى اذا كان فى الجملة ما يدل على المستقبل أو احتمال فى المستقبل.
3- الحالة الثانية اذا كان فى الجملة ما يدل على المضارع أو توهم أو تخيل أو افتراض.
4- الحالة الثالثة اذا كان فى الجملة ما يدل على الماضى أو استحالة.

♦ لاحظ الفارق بين حالات الشرط الثلاثة فى الأمثلة التالية :

Mother: "Mona, I want to make a cake this afternoon. Will you help me?"
Mona : "If I have time, I'll help you."

Mother: "Mona, I am going to make the cake now. Can you help me?"
Mona : "If I had time, I'd help you. But I have to do my homework."

Mother: "Now I've made the cake myself. Why didn't you help me?"
Mona : "If I'd had time, I'd have helped you. But I had to do my homework."

✍ ***Choose the correct answer:***

1- I wouldn't have reached this stage unless she …………………….. me.

a) helped b) had helped c) was helping d) would help

2- If we don't go now, we …………………….. catch the bus.

a) won't b) wouldn't c) didn't d) couldn't

3- If it ………………….. cloudy, we may not see the eclipse كسوف الشمس.

a) were b) was c) is d) had been

4- Keep the receipt الايصال……………. you want to change the goods.

a) in case of b) unless c) without d) in case

5- I wouldn't say it unless it …………………….. true.

a) is b) does c) did d) were

6- If Sam loses his job, he …………………… look for work in the city.

a) will b) would c) had to d) have to

7- What …………………… if it rained next June?

a) will you do b) may you do c) can you do d) would you do

8- ……………….. fire, leave the building as quickly as possible.

a) In case b) But for c) If d) In case of

9- ………………….. blood banks, many people would die.

a) In case b) But for c) Unless d) If

10- I'll give you the day off ………………… you work on Saturday morning.

a) unless b) in case of c) otherwise d) on condition that

11- I would put on protective glasses if I ………………………….. you.

a) were b) will be c) has been d) am

12- If she hadn't learned how to type, she …………………….. so many books.

a) would have written b) will write

c) wouldn't have written d) would write

13- If water freezes, it ………………….. into ice.

a) will turn b) turns c) would turn d) turned

14- If we leave now, we …………………….. the train.

a) catch b) will catch c) would catch d) might have caught

15- If I ………………….. the exam, I'll be very happy.

a) passed b) have passed c) had passed d) pass

16- If you worked harder, you ………………….. higher marks.

a) will get b) will have got c) would get d) can get

17- If people lived on the moon, they ………………… tired and bored.

a) will be b) may be c) would have been d) would be

18- If I …………………….. ten years younger, I'd go mountaineering.

a) were b) am c) have been d) are

19- If he …………………. on time, he wouldn't have missed the bus.

a) left b) have left c) would leave d) had left

20- Provided you look after it, you …………………….. borrow this DVD.
a) can b) could c) might d) would

21- If you had got the job, you …………………….. in Luxor.
a) would live b) would have lived c) will have lived d) will live

22- You can borrow my car …………………….. you drive carefully.
a) unless b) provides c) as long as d) in case of

23- I'll come this evening …………………….. I have to work late.
a) if b) as long as c) unless d) In case of

24- If I …………………….. more time, I would visit my friends in Dubai.
a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

25- If you ………………….. harder, you would have passed the test.
a) work b) worked c) has worked d) had worked

26- …………………... very happy if you achieved your goals ?
a) You would be b) Would you have been
c) You will be d) Would you be

27- …………………... him today, she would know what happened.
a) If she meets b) Had she met
c) Were she to meet d) Will she meet

28- The sea will be polluted …………….. we stop dumping oil and rubbish into it.
a) as long as b) if c) so that d) unless

29- If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany ………….. woken up late.
a) would have b) wouldn't have c) have been d) would be

30- The Red Sea resorts will be popular ……………….. they remain unpolluted.
a) if not b) provided that c) so as d) unless

31- If he hadn't bought a car, he ………………... that accident.
a) didn't have b) wouldn't have had c) would have d) wouldn't have

32- If he hadn't driven so fast, he ………………….. that accident.
a) wouldn't have b) wouldn't have had c) didn't have d) hadn't had

33- Would Ahmed be angry if I ……………..…… his bicycle without asking ?
a) take b) will take c) took d) had taken

34- He won't do any work ………………….. you pay him first.
a) without b) unless c) so d) in order to

35- Pilots won't be able to fly a plane unless they ………………….. .
a) will train b) had trained c) are trained d) were trained

36- You won't be able to achieve your goal ………………….. you work hard.
a) if b) as long as c) provided d) unless

37- If I hadn't bought a car, I ………………..…. that accident.
a) wouldn't have b) hadn't had c) didn't have d) wouldn't have had

38- Unless he had followed my advice, he ………………….. all his money.
a) would have lost b) would have a loss c) wouldn't lose d) wouldn't have lost

39- I wouldn't have reached this stage unless she …………..…….. me.
a) helped b) had helped c) was helping d) would help
40- What ………………….. if he had left the meeting?
a) will happen b) would happen c) has happened d) would have happened
41- Plants can grow without soil ………………. they get food from water.
a) as much as b) as far as c) as long as d) as many as
42- …………….. he understand the story if he read the summary?
a) Will b) Did c) Would d) Can
43- She couldn't have gone out during the eclipse if she ………….. superstitious.
a) was b) had been c) were d) is
44- I ……………….. out if it is stormy.
a) wouldn't go b) won't go c) wouldn't have gone d) hadn't gone
45- I would put on protective glasses if I ………………….. you.
a) were b) will be c) has been d) am
46- Unless she had known the correct answer, she ………..…….. it.
a) would have written b) will write
c) wouldn't have written d) would write
47- If he had studied well, he ………………..….. the best mark.
a) would get b) will get c) would be got d) would have got
48- If Wael lost his job, he ……………….... look for work in the city.
a) will b) would c) will not d) would not
49- Unless I'd had protective glasses, I ………………... the eclipse**.**
a) could not watch b) would not watch
c) would have been watched d) wouldn't have watched
50- I wouldn't have reached this stage unless she …………………….. me.
a) was helping b) helped c) would help d) had helped
51- If it was cold in the evening, you ……………. warm clothes.
a) will need b) needed c) would need d) would have needed
52- If you heat ice, it ………………….. .
a) melts b) would melt c) could melt d) might melt
53- If I find his telephone number, I …………………. Him.
a) would phone b) will phone c) could phone d) will have phoned
54- If she ……………… about the accident, she would have stayed at home.
a) knew b) has known c) had known d) knows
55- ……………… your call, the man might have died.
a) If b) Unless c) In case d) Without
56- If he hadn't got to hospital so quickly, he ……………… .
a) might die b) would die c) will die d) might have died
57- If there …………… an accident, there will be a traffic jam.
a) is b) are c) was d) were

58- If I had time, I …………… a book.

a) will write b) would write c) may write d) can write

59- If she has extra money, she usually ……………. it to charities.

a) will give b) would give c) give d) gives

60- But for the Nile, Egypt …………….. be a desert.

a) will be b) would be c) may be d) would have been

61- If I have a headache, I ………… a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.

a) will drink b) would drink c) drink d) drinks

62- I …………………. home earlier if I'd known you were worried.

a) will come b) came c) would come d) would have come

63- Ice melts if ………………. .

a) it heated b) heated c) heating d) is heated

64- Without my advice, he ………………….. all his money.

a) will lose b) would lose c) would have lost d) lost

65- If there hadn't been a doctor on the train yesterday, the man …………….. .

a) will die b) would die c) died d) would have died

Exercises on Unit 14.

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hassan got a mobile phone for his birthday. It was a modern ***one*** and Hassan looked after it very carefully. Soon, he was sending his friends text messages and researching information for his homework. He looked forward to sending photos with it.

One morning when he got up, he could not find the phone. He had put it in the pocket of his trousers the night before, but in the morning it was not there. He ***searched*** all over the house, but he could not find it. His brother and sister asked him what he was looking for, but ***they*** also could not find it. He did not want to tell his parents because the phone had been a present from them. Then, as he was leaving for school, his mother said, "Don't forget your phone, Hassan. I found it in you r trousers. If I hadn't found it, it would have gone into the washing machine!"

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- What does the under lined word *one* refer to?

a- house b- birthday c- phone d- Hassan

2- The underlined pronoun them refers to …………………….. .

a- parents b- brother and sister c- photos d- trousers

3- Who found the lost mobile?

a- Hassan b- brother c- mother d- sister

4- What do you think the word *searched* means?

a- walked b- looked carefully for something c- hid d- made a lot of noise

B) Answer the following questions :

5- Why do you think Hassan looked after his phone carefully?

6- What was he looking forward to doing with the phone before he lost it?

7- Do you think that he should have told his parents that he had lost it? Why?

8- What do you think would have happened to the phone if it had gone into the washing machine?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In most countries, men usually have heart diseases more than women do. Doctors say that heart diseases are related to daily life pressures, cares of jobs, daily lifestyle and the type of food. Although people may pass by troubles of the same degree and kind, they really react differently to **them**. Perhaps, men suffer much more because they do not cry enough when they are under pressure. Men all over the world, think that they are supposed to be strong , crying ; however , shows their inner weakness . People cry when something terrible happens to them like the death of one of their beloved ones and relatives, or when they know that they cannot do anything about problems , so they really feel absolutely helpless. Sometimes , people cry when they feel good; when an unexpected ,wonderful, delightful or amazing event happens in their lives all of a sudden.

Scientists say that man's body produces various multi – functional forms of tears; One is to clean out the eyes from the dirt regularly; this will consequently support their ability to fight a possible infection by any eye disease, the other protects the eyes against any other unfavourable visitors to enter them. On the other hand, tears sometimes warn man that his eyes are **exhausted** after a long stay in front of the screen of a computer and the TV, reading too much and being exposed to light or heat. But when man cries, because of strong feelings or some kind of mood, the result would be producing tears with a new function. In this case, tears play an important role in making man feel at ease and comfortable. In this process, our eyes are getting rid of some poisonous chemicals that may hurt them; on the other hand, the blood produces positive chemicals to save man from depression. Therefore, it is unlikely that anyone, who manages to deal with a hard situation by freeing his tears, will suffer from any bad effects on his heart.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The main title to this passage could be ………………… .

a) Tears do not affect health

b) Tears are not likely to have any importance

c) Tears are signs of happiness

d) It's important to express your feelings with tears

2. According to the passage, one of these sentences is not true ……………..… .

a) Tears affect heart diseases

b) Tears are signs of happiness

c) Tears has no impact on health

d) Tears help fight depression

3. The underlined "them" to ....
a) troubles b) diseases c) cares d) men

4. The underlined word "exhausted" means ....
a) fresh b) tired c) normal d) strong

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Men don't cry enough when they're under pressure of a certain problem. Why?
6. According to the text, what things might hurt our eyes?
7. How can tears save man from depression?
8. Do you support the writer concerning tears importance? Why? Why not?

3- Write an email of about 180 words on ONE of the following:

a- Write an email to your friend Nader giving advice about how to stay safe in the house.

b- Write an email to a friend about Rider Haggard's *King Solomon's Mines*, saying why it is a good book.

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- School-life has many sides. It does not only mean the classroom with its lessons but also means pupil's life outside the classroom, the games, the journeys and different activities.

2- Reading newspapers helps to know everything that takes place all over the world. It also provides us with much information about our local events. This sort of reading is also considered a source of culture to many people.

3- Due to the enormous progress in the means of communications, the world has become a global society.

4- No country can live in isolation any more. Therefore, all countries must co-operate to solve their problems.

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- منذ مئات السنين درس العلماء المخ البشرى، فقد أرادوا أن يكتشفوا إذا ما كان المخ له نفس الحجم لدى كل إنسان، وقد اكتشفوا أيضاً أنه يزن حوالى اثنان بالمائة من وزن الجسم.

2- الشخص الذى أعجب به أكثر ليس شهيراً ولا غنياً فهى أُمى فأنا أعجب بها لأننى مؤمن بعطفها وحبها لى فهى مثالاً للعطف والحب والعطاء والحنان والوفاء لى ولكل من حولها.

3- تحاول كثير من المنظمات جذب الانتباه إلي النتائج الكارثية لأي استخدام محتمل للأسلحة النووية وذلك كمحاولة لتنبيه المجتمع الدولى لما قد يترتب على ذلك من دمار شامل.

4- الغابات المطيرة هي الموطن الطبيعي لأعداد هائلة من أنواع النباتات والحيوانات ولذلك يجب الحفاظ عليها من الحرائق والقطع الجائر.

5- تقع مسئولية مواجهة التطرف و العنف علي الجميع و ليس الحكومة بمفردها لذا علينا جميعا أن نشارك فى نشر الوعى القومى وتوعية الشباب لما قد يصيب المجتمع بسببهما.

Unit 15 : Tourism Today

Vocabulary

accommodation	اقامة (اسم لا يعد)	package tour	رحلة متكاملة جماعية
culture	ثقافة	fixed price	سعر ثابت
essential	أساسى / ضرورى	mass tourism	السياحة الجماعية
travel agent	وكيل مكتب سياحى	destination	جهة الوصول
reputation	سمعة	employ	يوظف / يشغل
include	يشتمل على	wear away	يتأكل
cathedral	كاتدرائية	culture	ثقافة
staff	هيئة العاملين	coast	ساحل
value for money	ثمن مناسب	block	يحجب / يمنع
take it easy = relax	يسترخى / يتمهل	currency	عملة
pretend	يتظاهر	holiday makers	السياح
ancient sites	أماكن قديمة	block the way	يسد الطريق
tourist sites	أماكن سياحية	environmental problems	مشاكل بيئية
valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك	annoying	مضايق / مزعج
valley of the Queens	وادى الملكات	nuisance	ازعاج / مضايقة
attract	يجذب	air travel	السفر جوا
beliefs	معتقدات	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
behaviour	سلوك	carry	يحمل / ينقل
location	موقع / مكان	pollute / pollution	يلوث / التلوث
manager	مدير	outskirts	ضواحى
travel agency	وكالة سفر	damage	يدمر / يتلف
customer	زبون	tourist season	موسم سياحى
good quality	جودة عالية	foreign currency	عملة أجنبية
views	مناظر طبيعية	hard currency	عملة صعبة
relaxing	مريح	tourist industry	صناعة السياحة
flight	رحلة جوية	earner	مورد / مصدر (للدخل)
resort	مصيف / منتجع	overcrowding	ازدحام شديد
dentist's	عيادة طبيب الأسنان	ecotourism	السياحة البيئية
dentist	طبيب الأسنان	ecotourist	سائح يراعى البيئة
astronaut	رائد فضاء	respect	يحترم
cook	طاه / طباخ	window seat	مقعد بجوار النافذه
waiter	جرسون	aisle seat	مقعد بجوار الممر
traffic congestion	تكدس المرور	air-conditioned bus	أتوبيس مكيف الهواء
disrupt	يعطل	splendid	رائع
indispensable	لا يمكن الاستغناء عنه	vacancy	وظيفة خالية / غرفة خالية

extend stay	يمد الاقامة	air hostess	مضيفة جوية
daily routine	نظام يومى	promptly	بسرعة / فورا

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

popular with	محبوب من	make money out of	يجنى مالا من
add to	يضيف الى	bring money into	يجلب المال لـ
go on visits with	يذهب فى زيارات مع	cause / do damage to	يسبب تلف لـ
on the beach	على البلاج	take it easy	استرخى / تمهل
essential for	ضرورى لـ	at its best	فى أفضل صورة
at particular times	فى أوقات معينة	benefit from	يستفيد من
in time	فى الوقت المناسب	in a short time	فى فترة قصيرة
cut trees down	يقطع الأشجار	compared to	بالمقارنة بـ
knock down	يهدم	stay in / at a hotel	يمكث فى فندق
catch a flight to	يلحق برحلة لـ	feel negative about	يشعر بالسلبية تجاه
for / at a fixed price	بسعر ثابت	take a trip to	يقوم برحلة الى
on the Mediterranean coast	على ساحل البحر المتوسط	on the Red Sea coast	على ساحل البحر الأحمر

General Words

curricula	مناهج	mixed blessing	نعمة ونقمة
specialists	متخصصون	corner stone	حجر الزاوية
scholarships	منح دراسية	book fair	معرض الكتاب
teaching techniques	اساليب تدريس	current events	الأحداث الجارية
educational aids	وسائل تعليمية	flexibility	المرونة
technical education	التعليم الفنى	frustration	الإحباط
distance training	التدريب عن بعد	bullying	البلطجة / التنمر

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
thin	slim	thick
essential	necessary	inessential
relaxing	comfortable	stressed
annoying	disturbing	lovely / pleasant
frightened	scared / terrified	brave / calm
particular	special / important	ordinary
fixed	arranged	changeable

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
include	inclusion	inclusive
block	blockage	blocked
pretend	pretence	pretended
believe	belief	believable
promise	promise	promising
apply	application	applicable
employ	employment	employable
accommodate	accommodation	accommodating
discover	discovery	discoverable
pollute	pollution	polluted
involve	involvement	involved

Spot The Difference

memory	souvenir
try	try on
cost	coast
staff	stuff
monuments	moments
repetition	reputation
currency	coin
cook	cooker
view	landscape
pollutant	polluter
voyage	flight
trip	journey
lovely	beloved
especially	specially

Wear as a phrasal verb

- **wear away**: (كالنقوش و الحجارة و السلالم) ***يزيل - يتآكل نتيجة لكثرة الاستخدام***
  - The inscription نقوش on the coin عملة معدنية **wore away**.
- **wear down**: (شخص أو فريق) ***يُضعف / يتغلب بالتدريج على***
  - She was **worn down** by overwork.
- **wear off**: (ألم أو دواء) ***يختفي أثره أو يزول بالتدريج***
  - The pain in my knee is slowly **wearing off**.

✍ **wear on**: (للوقت) **يمر ببطء**

- As the week **wore on**, she discovered that she didn't do anything useful.

✍ **wear out**: (ملابس أو أحذية) **يبلى ولا يصلح للاستخدام**

- My boots **wore out**. I need to buy a new pair.

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Voice: Speaker one.

Man 1: I'm here for a week with my wife and children. I've wanted to come here since I learnt about Egypt at school. We're staying near Cairo and while we're here we're going to see the Pyramids at Giza, the Great Sphinx and other ancient sites. My children have to study ancient history at school next year, so this trip will be very interesting for them. We must buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here, and the children are hoping to spend a day or two on the beach

Voice: Speaker two.

Man 2: I'm the manager of a travel agency in Alexandria. I arrange accommodation and trips for foreign visitors to Egypt. Of course, some times of the year are busier than others for us. There are parts of the year when my staff and I have to work twelve hours a day for six days a week, then other times are quieter, which means that we don't have to work such long hours. I enjoy my job – especially when customers say they have enjoyed the trips we've organised. Sometimes I pretend to be a tourist and go on the trips myself, because we must always make sure that the customers are getting value for money. It is essential for our reputation that we look after tourists well. We mustn't forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.

Voice: Speaker three.

Woman: I'm here with my sister – we're sailing down the Nile from Luxor to Aswan. It's been a fantastic journey so far. The views from the boat are wonderful – we've learnt a lot about the life and culture of Egyptian people. We've sailed past the temples of Edfu and Kom Ombo. We're finding it very interesting, but also relaxing. It's a real change from our life in London. For example, we don't need to get up or go to bed at particular times – we can just take it easy. We have to be back in Cairo on Friday in time to catch our flight back to England.

Reading :

Tourism Today

People have visited Egypt ever since Greek and Roman times, but modern tourism began when an Englishman, Thomas Cook, arranged the first **package tour** in 1841. Package tours are holidays arranged by a travel company which **include** travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a **fixed** price.

Mass tourism first became popular in the 1960s, when air travel became

cheaper, and today tourism is a huge business. Millions of tourists are carried by air to destinations all over the world. Countries on the Mediterranean coast attract millions of tourists every summer!

Countries make a lot of money out of tourism, but there are also disadvantages. For example, about one hundred people visit Notre Dame **cathedral** in Paris every minute. Their feet **wear away** the stone floors. The buses waiting for the tourists produce pollution that damages the outside of the building.

During the tourist season, many of the world's great cities are very difficult to live in. Try shopping in Prague or Florence in the middle of summer! Tourists with cameras **block** your way. Shopping is impossible!

For Egypt, tourism is the second most important earner of foreign currency after oil. The tourist industry **employs** thousands of people such as travel agents, hotel staff and building workers. If more tourists visit in the future, new hotels and roads will have to be built and new parks and resorts will need to be planned.

Five-star hotel opening next summer

A large international hotel group has plans to open a five-star hotel on the outskirts of our town next summer. The future manager of the new hotel is now the manager of a small hotel in Greece, but it is believed that between one and two hundred new staff will be needed when the hotel opens. There will be work for accountants, managers, trained cooks, waiters and cleaners. The new hotel is expected to attract thousands of foreign tourists to our town every year.

Definitions

accommodation	a place to live, stay or work in
culture	the art, beliefs, behaviour, ideas of a society or a group of people
particular	special or important
pretend	to behave as if something is true when you are sure it is not true.
reputation	the opinion that people have of a person, product , company ,etc.
staff	the group of people who work for an organization
travel agent	someone whose job is to help people make travel arrangements
visitor	a person who visits a place or a person
package tour	a tour arranged by a company including transport, accommodation
fixed	arranged in advance and not able to be changed.
include	contain something as part of something else.
wear away	become damaged after repeated use
mass	a large number grouped together
cathedral	a large important church
employ	gives work to people
block	stop or get in the way of something

Language Notes.

- **mass**: عدد كبير (tourism, media, destruction, production, communication)
- **massive**: حجم كبير (fortress, industry, building, increase)

- **plan** خطة / **plane** طائرة / **plain** واضح / **plains** سهول

- **Have you got anything to declare?** (في الجمارك) هل لديك ما تعلن عنه؟

- **encourage / recommend + V-ing / noun.** بدون مفعول
  - I **recommend** send**ing** him an e-mail.
- **encourage / recommend** someone **to + inf.** بمفعول
  - We should **encourage** children **to** read.

- **reputation** (آراء الناس) سمعة - She acquired a reputation as a reporter.
- **fame** شهرة - He went to Hollywood in search of fame and fortune.
- **destination** (المكان المقصود) مكان الوصول
  - Our luggage was checked all the way through to our final destination.
- **location** موقع - What is the exact location of the ship.

- **earner** مصدر ربح أو دخل - Tourism is the biggest foreign currency earner.
- **breadwinner** عائل الأسرة - My mother was the breadwinner in our family.

Language Functions.

Preferences التفضيلات

- I'd prefer to .... , but I'm happy to go to .... instead.
  أفضل أن ...... ولكنى سعيد أن ...... بدلا من ذلك.
- I'd like to go to .... , but it's probably better to go to ....
  أريد أن اذهب إلى .... ولكن من المحتمل أنه سيكون من الأفضل أن اذهب إلى .....
- Do we all agree? So we're going to ...... هل نتفق جميعا؟ إذا نحن سوف
- That's good – we all agree. حسنا. نحن نتفق جميعا.

- **I'd prefer to** go to the cinema **but I am happy to** go to the theatre **instead**.
- **I'd like to** go to the zoo **but it's probably better to** go to the circus.

Choose the correct answer:

1- I really like to take it .... at the weekends, as I work hard in the week.
  a) hard **b) easy** **c) seriously** **d) easily**
2- I enjoyed that meal and it didn't cost much. It was really good.........for money.
  a) value **b) valuable** **c) valueless** **d) valued**

3- My brother and I used to play a game where we ……… to be astronauts.

a) showed b) provided c) prevented d) pretended

4- When I go somewhere, I like to find out about the ……….. of the people there.

a) cultural b) agricultural c) cultured d) culture

5- In Europe ……… tourism began in the 1960s, when air travel became cheaper.

a) mass b) pass c) loss d) class

6- Sharm El-Sheikh is on the Red Sea ………………... .

a) beach b) coast c) branch d) bank

7- ……………. is important because it brings money into countries.

a) Terrorism b) Capitalism c) Tourism d) Organism

8- The cost of a flight from Europe to Egypt is .... It won't change until next year.

a) changing b) movable c) fixed d) stable

9- If children play football for too long, they will …………………. away the grass.

a) tear b) wear c) bear d) clear

10- When we went on holiday last year, we arranged our own ….. in a small hotel.

a) rest b) sleeping c) hotel d) accommodation

11- Our school has a ……………….. of 40 people. Most of them are teachers.

a) stuff b) staff c) save d) safe

12- Our dentist has a very good ……………. . Everyone says how good he is.

a) fame b) famous c) title d) reputation

13- I want to be a doctor when I'm older, so it's ……. that I go to a good university.

a) annual b) initial c) material d) essential

14- Does the price of the ticket ……………. a visit to the museum garden?

a) inclusion b) consist c) contain d) include

15- The hotel on the beach …………. many waiters and cleaners.

a) employs b) employer c) employee d) employment

16- Luxor is a popular Egyptian ………………… for many visitors to Egypt.

a) resort b) shore c) station d) destination

17- In the second half, we wore ………. the other team and won the match 3-2.

a) down b) out c) away d) on

18- These shoes are going to wear …………… soon. I'll have to buy some more.

a) off b) on c) out d) over

19- It was hard work and as the day wore …….. I became more and more tired.

a) away b) out c) off d) on

20- If you take this medicine now, it won't wear ………………….. until tomorrow.

a) off b) down c) on d) away

21- ……….. tours are arranged by a company including travel and accommodation.

a) Luggage b) Package c) Packet d) Baggage

22- Many countries ………………………a lot of money out of tourism.

a) do b) make c) reate d) work

23- She bought a silver tray from Khan El Khalili as ………. of her visit to Egypt.
a) a thought b) a memory c) a souvenir d) an idea

24- The tourist industry ……………. huge numbers of Egyptians.
a) uses b) works c) lends d) employs

25- Countries on the Mediterranean ……… have more people during the summer.
a) banks b) shores c) coasts d) beaches

26- Tourists are carried by planes to ……………….. all over the world.
a) destinations b) positions c) spaces d) sites

27- Tourists' feet wear ……………….. the stone floors of ancient places.
a) away b) down c) up d) off

28- My visit to Japan is only a …………….. now.
a) souvenir b) memory c) mind d) remember

29- This mobile is a good …………….. for money.
a) valuable b) values c) valueless d) value

30- This airline flies to many ………….. around the world.
a) destinations b) goals c) aims d) delegation

31- The travel ……. arranges tickets and hotel rooms for people going on holiday.
a) operator b) agent c) assistant d) worker

32- One disadvantage of …... tourism is that it causes overcrowding and pollution.
a) massive b) mass c) massively d) masses

33- My uncle owns a company which arranges ………….. tours at good prices.
a) package b) packet c) luggage d) baggage

34- Tourism can cause damage …………… historical monuments.
a) for b) by c) in d) to

35- I wish the government ……..… something about the heavy traffic in our cities.
a) will do b) can do c) has done d) would do

36- Modern tourism began when Cook arranged the first package ………. in 1841.
a) tour b) camp c) walk d) hotel

37- We'd like to visit Luxor but we don't know where we can find good ………….. .
a) hotel b) accommodation c) rest d) sleeping

38- The Red Sea ……………. is famous for its fish, corals and beautiful wildlife.
a) area b) beach c) coast d) ocean

39- It's ………… that my uncle wears glasses, he can hardly see without them!
a) essential b) important c) a duty d) interesting

40- In a package tour, the company offers travel costs and stay, …… a fixed price.
a) for b) in c) with d) by

41- The ……. of the Mediterranean have a population of about 130 million people.
a) banks b) beaches c) branches d) shores

42- The car enables me to reach my ……………….. quickly.
a) location b) situation c) destination d) accommodation

43- Travel agents make a lot of money out of …………….. .

a) tourism **b) terrorism** **c) tourist** **d) terrorist**

44- Planeloads of holiday ………….. are carried to destinations all over the world.

a) drivers **b) doers** **c) riders** **d) makers**

45- The buses waiting for tourists …………………. a lot of pollution.

a) produce **b) reduce** **c) reproduce** **d) purify**

46- My sister has a ……….... for being a kind person and helping all other people.

a) fame **b) famous** **c) title** **d) reputation**

47- Different countries use different kinds of money, which are called …………… .

a) coins **b) currencies** **c) dollars** **d) notes**

48- The doctor told Yousef to …… after his operation and not to do any exercise.

a) take it easy **b) take it out** **c) make it easy** **d) make over**

49- You can't enjoy your holiday if you don't have good …………………. .

a) hotel **b) room** **c) accommodation** **d) house**

50- My favourite holiday destination is a small fishing boat on the ………………. .

a) coast **b) cost** **c) lacoast** **d) cause**

51- Tourism is the second most important …………. of foreign currency for Egypt.

a) earn **b) breadwinner** **c) loser** **d) earner**

52- We don't need to get up early. We can just ………………. it easy.

a) give **b) make** **c) take** **d) come**

53- We must buy ………………… for our friends while we are in Luxor.

a) memories **b) souvenirs** **c) memorials** **d) souvages**

54- We should protect our historic and famous ………………… .

a) monuments **b) moments** **c) minutes** **d) memories**

55- I wish I ………………… give up smoking.

a) can **b) shall** **c) may** **d) could**

56- Most hotels in Egypt have a good ………………… .

a) repetition **b) rebillion** **c) reputation** **d) repairation**

57- ………………… is the group of people who work for an organization.

a) stoff **b) stuff** **c) staff** **d) stiff**

58- A ………………… is the type of money that a country uses.

a) note **b) currency** **c) coin** **d) banknote**

59- When something is good …….. for money, it's high quality considering the price.

a) valley **b) valuation** **c) value** **d) valuable**

60- It's expensive to travel by plane. This means it is ………………. .

a) cost **b) costly** **c) costless** **d) costing**

Language Focus

Necessity & Obligation الضرورة و الالزام

✍ الضرورة تعنى أن الانسان مجبر و ليس لديه اختيار.

✍ للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الحاضر أو المستقبل نستخدم:

must **has to / have to = am/is/are to** **needs to / need to** **has got to / have got to** **It's necessary for …….. to ….**	**+ inf. مصدر**

- I **must buy** some bread. - I **must go** now.
- My brother and I **have to go** to school every day.
- Hassan **needs to** go to the bank after he finishes work.
- My children **have to go** to school next year.
- I'**ve got to go** to school tomorrow.

✍ للتعبير عن ضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم:

had to = was / were to **needed to** **It was necessary for … to ….**	**+ inf. مصدر**

- He **had to go** to hospital yesterday.
- My grandfather **had to work** six days a week.

✍ ملاحظات:

• يمكن أن نستخدم **will have/need to** للتعبير عن الضرورة فى المستقبل :

- The flight is at six in the morning, so we'**ll have to get up** very early.

• تستخدم **must + inf.** للتعبير عن ضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم وتستخدم فى:

1- نصيحة قوية لشخص **strong advice :**

- You **must wash** your hands before you eat.

2- دعوة حارة **a warm invitation :**

- You **must come** and see us at the weekend.

3- نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء **a strong reminder to ourselves :**

- We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here.

4- تعبر عن أمنية فى المستقبل :

- I **must** work hard for the exams next week.

• تستخدم **have to / have got to / need to** للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا:

قوانين – لوائح – قواعد – تعليمات – ظروف خارجة عن ارادة المتحدث

- I **have to take** the medicine regularly.
- We'**ve got to give** in our homework tomorrow.
- I have no money. I **need to get** some from my bank.

Lack of Necessity عدم وجود ضرورة

✍ و تعنى أن الانسان غير مجبر و لديه اختيار. (لا أختيار الا بين صحيحين)

✍ للتعبير عن عدم وجود ضرورة فى الحاضر نستخدم :

needn't
don't / doesn't need to
don't / doesn't have to
haven't / hasn't got to
It's not necessary for ...... to ...
} + inf. مصدر

- When you are on holiday, you **don't need to g**o to bed early.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't go** to bed early.
- She **doesn't have to work** on Saturday.

✍ للتعبير عن عدم وجود ضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم :

didn't have to
didn't need to
It wasn't necessary for ...... to ...
} + inf. مصدر

- I **didn't have to go** to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to do** the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.

✍ للتعبير عن عدم وجود ضرورة فى المستقبل نستخدم :

Won't have to
Won't need to
It won't be necessary for ...... to ...
} + inf. مصدر

- I **won't have to clean** the room tomorrow. Mother will do it.

Prohibition المنع و التحريم

✍ وتعنى أن هناك قواعد و قوانين يجب اتباعها و المخالفة تعرضك للعقاب :

mustn't =	Be not allowed to	+ مصدر	غير مسموح أن
	Be not permitted to	+ مصدر	غير مسموح أن
	Be forbidden to	+ مصدر	ممنوع أن
	Be banned from	+ v. + ing	ممنوع من
	Be prohibited from	+ v. + ing	ممنوع من

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.
= You **aren't allowed to smoke** in hospitals.
= You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals.
= You **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.
= You **are banned from smoking** in hospitals.
= You **are prohibited from smoking** in hospitals.

ملاحظات :

♦ تدل didn't have to + inf. على حدث لم يتم في الماضي لكونه غير ضروري:

- I **didn't have to** go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.

♦ تدل needn't have + PP. على حدث تم في الماضي على الرغم من أنه غير ضروري:

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

♦ لاحظ الفرق بين need to كفعل ناقص في الالزام و need كفعل عادى بمعنى يحتاج أو يتطلب:

- This job **needs** computer skills.
- I **need to** finish the job early. = I **must** finish it early.

♦ تستخدم Must في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد وتأتى في بداية السؤال:

- **Must** he send the e-mail now? – Yes, he **must.** – No, he **needn't.**

♦ في حالة استخدام have / need to في السؤال نستخدم فعل مساعد do/does/did:

- **Do** you **have to** do the job now?
- **Does** she **need to** go now?
- **Did** she **have to** borrow that money?

♦ تستخدم have got to في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد:

- **Have** you **got to** be at the office every day?
- **Has** that man **got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

♦ تستخدم should/ought to / had better عادة للتعبير عن النصيحة:

♦ **should = ought to = had better = If I were you, I'd… = It's a good idea to….
= It's advisable to….= It's desirable to…+ inf.**

- You **should** make a study plan to organize your work.
  = **It is a good idea to** make a study plan to organize ……..
- **It is advisable to** eat fresh food. = You **ought to** eat fresh food.
- You **shouldn't** leave your job. = **If I were you, I wouldn't** leave my job.

♦ تستخدم should have + PP. للتعبير عن أن شيء كان يجب أن يحدث في الماضي ولم يتم ونستخدمه عادة عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين:

- You **should have done** your homework yesterday.
- You **shouldn't have parked** your car here. It's a 'No Parking' area.

Choose the correct answer:

1- My children …………………….. study ancient history at school next year.
a) have to **b) must** **c) needed** **d) needn't**

2- We ………………….. buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
a) must **b) have to** **c) mustn't** **d) needn't**

3- We …………………… get up or go to bed at particular times.
a) don't need to **b) mustn't** **c) has got to** **d) don't have**

4- We ……………………… forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
a) must **b) mustn't** **c) needn't** **d) don't have to**

5- I ……………………… get up very early on school days.
a) have to **b) mustn't** **c) needn't** **d) has to**

6- I ……………………… phone my friend this morning. I promised him I would.

a) needn't b) have to c) must d) has to

7- In some countries, children ……………………wear school uniforms.

a) don't need to b) didn't have to c) mustn't d) has to

8- Most school children in Britain ………………. wear a school uniform.

a) has to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) have to

9- You ……………. spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.

a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) must

10- You …….. take that book back to the library. You can keep it for another week.

a) have to b) don't have to c) must d) can't

11- You ………………….. pass your exams to go to university.

a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) have to

12- I really …..……. phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him when I had any news.

a) mustn't b) must c) had to d) have to

13- You ……………….. take that train. There's another one in ten minutes.

a) mustn't b) has to c) don't have to d) have to

14- You ……………. buy that book. I can lend you mine.

a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) needn't

15- You ………………. speak so loudly on your phone. It's very annoying.

a) mustn't b) need to c) had to d) have to

16- When you arrive in another country, you ………………. show your passport.

a) must b) has to c) had to d) have to

17- My staff and I ……………………. work twelve hours for six days a week.

a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) had to d) have to

18- At other times it's quieter, so we ……………….. work such long hours.

a) mustn't b) has to c) don't have to d) have to

19- We ………… buy some milk from the shops because we don't have any.

a) mustn't b) need to c) don't need to d) may

20- I want to go to university. I ……………….. apply before the end of the week.

a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) need to

21- You …………………. see your doctor. You look ill.

a) must b) needn't c) can't d) may

22- School starts at 8 : 30. I ……………….. get there before that time.

a) might b) have to c) can d) may

23- You can stay at home if you want. You …………. go shopping with us.

a) can't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) need to

24- I ……………….. hurry. My train leaves in 5 minutes.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to

25- These old buildings ………………. knocked down.

a) have to be b) has to be c) had to be d) have to

26- I ……………….. go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.

a) needn't b) won't c) didn't have to d) shouldn't

27- You ……………………. drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.

a) needn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

28- We ………………… give our homework to the teacher until next week.

a) didn't have to b) mustn't c) don't have to d) must

29- I was very tired yesterday. I …………………….. go to bed early.

a) was b) must c) needn't d) had to

30- Last year, we ….......... work 12 hours a day for six days to finish the project.

a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) have to

31- I have been tired all week. I …………………. get more sleep.

a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) must

32- We've got plenty of time. We ……………. hurry.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) have to

33- We ……………….. lock the car. It's safe here.

a) mustn't b) has to c) needn't d) shouldn't

34- You …………………. park here. It says a "No Parking area.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) have to

35- You ……………………. come if you don't want.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) have to

36- Stop! You'll be punished! You ………………….. have parked here.

a) shouldn't b) didn't c) can't d) wouldn't

37- It's a holiday tomorrow, so I …………………………… get up early.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) won't have to

38- Last weekend, I …………………… study hard for the exams.

a) have to b) has to c) needn't d) had to

39- The referee said to the footballer, "You …………………. play like that."

a) mustn't b) has to c) needn't d) shouldn't

40- I …………………… help my brothers because my mother was ill.

a) mustn't b) had to c) needn't d) didn't have to

41- I ……………………… go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) didn't have to

42- I had instructions that I .... to leave the door unlocked when I came home.

a) were b) am c) be d) was

43- Why ………………… to go to hospital last night?

a) do you have b) have you got c) must d) did you have

44- It's raining outside, you ……………….. take your umbrella with you.

a) must b) needn't c) had to d) may

45- You …………. do your homework today because tomorrow will be a holiday.

a) will not b) cannot c) don't have to d) don't need

46- You …………. phone him because I have already talked to him.

a) mustn't **b) have to** **c) don't have to** **d) hadn't to**

47- I …………… help my father with repairing things in the house yesterday.

a) have to **b) had to** **c) need to** **d) must**

48- There's a traffic jam on 6th of October Bridge. We ……….. take another road.

a) needn't **b) mustn't** **c) had to** **d) will have to**

49- In the winter, you ………………… use the air conditioner to cool the room.

a) don't need to **b) mustn't** **c) didn't have to** **d) don't have**

50- You ………….. use the air conditioner. Dad's sick and shouldn't get too cold.

a) don't need to **b) mustn't** **c) didn't have to** **d) don't have**

51- I ……….. study hard for my final geography exam. I want to get a good grade.

a) must **b) had to** **c) have to** **d) had must**

52- There are always children near the school, so you …….. drive very carefully.

a) can **b) must** **c) mustn't** **d) need**

53- You are banned from …………….. here. It's against the law.

a) park **b) parked** **c) parking** **d) parks**

54- You …………….. bring any food with you tomorrow. I'll have enough for us all.

a) mustn't **b) doesn't need** **c) haven't** **d) needn't**

55- I want to go to university. I ……………….. apply before the end of the week.

a) should **b) has to** **c) need to** **d) needn't**

Exercises on Unit 15

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is most necessary for everyone to cut down on his food expenses. Since the early 1970s the cost of the food has gone up faster than the cost of all commodities and services. The increase has **mounted** to more than 300%.

For all Egyptian families, food is the biggest item in their monthly household. In fact, "**it** "swallows more than half the budget of millions of low-income families. People suffer from the high prices of food a lot. How will such a state of affairs end? Is it the fate of low-income families to face starvation? Isn't there any solution? To be sure, there is. You can reduce your food expenses at least 20% by observing the following pieces of advice. Note the food items you need when your supplies run low. Group the same kind of food together and write a list of your needs. Use you list as you shop and don't buy any items which are not included on the list. Food is sold nowadays in different forms: fresh, canned and frozen. Choose the cheapest and healthiest ones. You can buy fresh vegetables instead of frozen ones because they are cheaper and healthier. Chickens are cheaper than red meat. You can have cheese, beans and eggs instead of meat.

One last bit of advice, "Don't go shopping on an empty stomach". Shopping when you are hungry tempt you to buy things you don't really need.

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- The underlined word "**it**" in the second paragraph refers to ……………….. .

a) the budget **b)** food **c)** commodities **d)** services

2- The word "mounted" in bold is a synonym to …………….. .

a) decreased **b)** reduced **c)** limited **d)** exceeded

3- As food is the biggest item in the Egyptian family budget, people should buy……. .

a) all the food **b)** frozen food **c)** only healthy and cheap food **d)** canned food

4- A suitable title for this passage may be ………………. .

a) food crisis **b)** food production **c)** food importance **d)** food eating

B) Answer the following questions :

5- How have prices increased since the 1970s?

6- How can you avoid buying unnecessary food?

7- How, do you think, a person can reduce his food expenses?

8- What do you think we can buy instead of meat?

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant **one** for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied. If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool. Even if sportsman friend and my lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods. But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. What would a lazy person do on a passenger ship?

a. He would relax in a chair. b. He would quarrel with other passengers.

c. He would do more exercise. d. He would turn into an active person.

2. A sportsman is fond of …………..……… .

a. playing games b. reading books

c. eating much food d. sleeping early

3. The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ....

a. coming to new states b. coming to new harbours

c. meeting people d. going shopping

4. What does the underlined word "one" refer to?

a. the person b. the ship c. the holiday d. the sport

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Find a word that means "use of a part of the body to strengthen and improve it".

6. What does the passage writer become like after doing exercise on the ship?

7. What are we told about the foods and drinks on a modern passenger ship?

8. Why do you think a sportsman won't be happy with a lazy man?

3- Write an essay of 180 words about one of the following topics :

1- How can Egypt attract more tourists? 2- Tourism industry

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- Applying for a new job needs the applicant to be well experienced in the advertised job. An applicant must be good at English and computer science. He must also have good general knowledge.

2- We must not leave pieces of food without covering. Also we must not eat the food that smells bad or the tinned food if these tins are swollen as the food will be bad and dangerous for our health.

3- Taking part in the school community is a great way to build students' self-esteem. When students contribute to the community, it gives them a sense of ownership and pride.

4- Tourism has a number of social and economic benefits. It helps in improving infrastructure, creates employment oppurtunities and increases foreign currency.

5- Egypt is making great efforts to put the economy on the right path of inclusive growth. Our economy will witness a great leap during the coming years.

B) Translate into Arabic :

1- لا يمكننا أن نعيش بمفردنا فنحن دائماً فى حاجة لمساعدة كل من حولنا، فنحن نحتاج للملابس التى يصنعها غيرنا وإلى البيوت التى يبنيها الآخرون وإلى الطعام الذى ينتجونه.

2- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة يُعد أمراً هاماً بالنسبة لك لأنك تحتاج إلى أن تستمتع بعملك، ولكنك يجب أن تعلم أن أصحاب الأعمال يفضلون الموظفين المهرة والثقة.

3- تعتمد العديد من الدول على السياحة كمصدر رئيسى للدخل القومى ولكن لسوء الحظ يمكن أن تصبح السياحة مصدراً للمشاكل خاصة اذا ما لم يتم ادارتها بصورة جيدة.

4- توجد سياحة بيئية فى الصحارى وعلى امتداد البحر الأحمر وفى الواحات مثل واحة سيوة.

5- ان السياحة يمكن أن تضيف الى مشكلات التلوث والازدحام والحاق الضرر بالآثار التاريخية.

Unit 16: Rudyard Kipling: “If”

Vocabulary

grow up	ينمو / يكبر	foe : enemy	خِصم / عدو
aim	هدف	worth	قيمة / ثمن
inspiring	مثير / ملهم	impostor	محتال / نصاب
unforgiving	قاسي / لا يرحم	bear	يتحمل
virtue	الفضيلة	worn-out	بالي / متهالك
allowance	تسامح / تغاضي	folly	حماقة
triumph	انتصار	keep calm	يهدأ
develop	ينمو / يتطور	stable	مستقر / ثابت
jungle	أدغال	blame	يلوم / لوم
achievement	انجاز	doubt	يشك / شك
poem	قصيدة	doubtful	مشكوك فيه / مريب
editor	محرر	wise / wisdom	حكيم / الحكمة
editor in chief	رئيس التحرير	confidence	الثقة
adults	الكبار / البالغين	reform	يُصْلِح / إصلاح
countryside	الريف	hate / hatred	يكره / كراهية
inspire	يلهم	hateful	كريه
forgive	يسامح	patient	صبور
forgiveness	سماح / غفران	resist	يقاوم
forgiving	متسامح / غفور	thoughts	أفكار
worthless	عديم القيمة	realistic	واقعي
lenient : tolerant	متساهل / متسامح	disaster	كارثة
brave	شجاع	twist	يحرف / يلوي
behave / act	يتصرف	knave	محتال / وغد
behavior	تصرف / سلوك	swindler	محتال / نصاب
quality	سمة / ميزة	stoop	يحني رأسه / يخضع
perfect	كامل / مثالي	fool	أحمق / ساذج
good and evil	الخير والشر	wicked	شرير
imaginative	واسع الخيال / مبدع	deceive	يخدع
disappointed	مُحبَط	fruitful work	عمل مثمر
crowds	عامة الناس	verse	فقرة شعرية
remain	يظل م يبقي	rhyme	قافية
self-trust	الثقة بالنفس	understanding	متفاهم
trustworthy	جدير بالثقة	humble	متواضع
amount	كمية	humility	التواضع
appearance	المظهر	courage	شجاعة

castle	قلعة	manhood	الرجولة
sensible	عاقل / راشد	human nature	الطبيعة البشرية
tools	أدوات / وسائل	trap	فخ / يحتجز
morals	الأخلاق	arrogance	تكبر / غرور
principles	المبادئ	praise	يمدح / يثني علي
negativity	السلبية	guidance	إرشاد / توجيه

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

keep your head	احتفظ بهدوئك	build up : rebuild	يعيد بناء
lose your head	تفقد هدوء أعصابك	make the most of	يستغل ...
lose the common touch	لا يتفاعل مع العامة	count on	يعتمد علي
deal with : count with	يتعامل مع	be a success	يحقق نجاح / شهرة
deal in : do business	يتاجر في	associate with	يتفاهم / ينسجم مع
deal with lies : be a liar	يكذب	Keep your virtue	احتفظ بتأثيرك
give way to hating	يفسح المجال للكراهية	twist the facts	يحرف / يشوه الحقائق
treat ..... just the same	يتلقى نفس المعاملة	write in verse	يكتب بلغة الشعر
cry over the spilt milk	يبكي علي ما فات	turn his head	يذهل العقل
fill the unforgiving minute	يشغل اللحظة الصعبة	start over	يبدأ من جديد
make allowances for	يتسامح / يتغاضي عن	make a trap for	ينصب فخا لـ
warn ...... against / of	يحذر .... من	lead .... astray	يخدع / يضلل

General Words

blackmail	يبتز / ابتزاز	eye witness	شاهد عيان
unrests	قلاقل-أضطرابات	extremism	التطرف
infrastructure	البنية التحتية	harassment	التحرش
terrorist acts	أعمال إرهابية	illogical reasons	مبررات غير منطقية
foreign policy	السياسة الخارجية	homelessness	التشرد
domestic policy	السياسة الداخلية	Trade Union	نقابة التجاريين
security measures	إجراءات أمنية	mass destruction	الدمار الشامل

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
knave	dishonest	honest
virtue	honour	vice
triumph	victory	defeat
forgiving	tolerant	unforgiving

worth	value	worthless
inspiring	motivating	discouraging
calm	relaxed	nervous
brave	courageous	cowardly
imaginative	creative	unimaginative
strong	tough	weak
worn-out	damaged	new
kind	thoughtful	cruel

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
inspire	inspiration	inspiring
tolerate	tolerance	tolerant
imagine	imagination	imaginative
strengthen	strength	strong
allow	allowance	allowable
bear	bearing	bearable
hate	hatred	hateful
invent	invention	inventive
forgive	forgiveness	forgiving
grow	growth	grown

Spot The Difference

inspire	aspire
inspiration	conspiration
care	carefulness
imaginative	imaginary
grown (adj.)	growing (adj.)
grow	grow up
later	latter
victory	triumph
aim	goal
lie	lay
block	trap
rhyme	rhythm
the country	the counrtyside
local	national

Read the following carefully

Listening : **The writer Rudyard Kipling**

Mariam: Have you seen the film, **The Jungle Book**? It's about a boy who grows up in the jungle.

Soha : I've heard of it, but I haven't seen it.

Mariam: It's a really good story. It was written by an English writer called **Rudyard Kipling**. I liked the film so much that I decided to read a book about the author. He'd an interesting life and wrote children's books, books for adults and poems.

Soha : When did he live?

Mariam: He was born in India in 1865.

Soha : Did Kipling like India?

Mariam: Yes. *Growing up in India*, he developed a love of the markets and Indian people.

Soha : Where did he go to school?

Mariam: He went to school in England and became the editor of the school newspaper.

Soha : When did he start to write books?

Mariam: After he returned to India. He worked for a local newspaper, often thinking of stories in the evening.

Soha : When did he write The Jungle Book?

Mariam: That was a few years later. Kipling married an American woman and they built a large house in the American countryside. He wrote The Jungle Book there in 1894, a year after their first daughter, Josephine, was born. They then had a second daughter and a son. Kipling loved children, and children loved his books!

Soha : Did he stay in America?

Mariam: No. The family decided to return to England in 1896. They later lived in an old house in England with a big garden. Kipling enjoyed writing there. *Writing stories and poems* for adults and children, he became very successful.

Soha : Which is his most famous poem?

Mariam: It's a poem called "If".

Soha : What is it about?

Mariam: The speaker in the poem teaches his son what to do and what not to do to become a successful person. *Reading the poem*, you feel that you want to do well at everything! It's very inspiring! Shall I read you my favourite part?

Soha : Yes, please.

Mariam: "If you can fill the unforgiving minute with sixty seconds' worth of distance run, Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it!" This means that you should use your time well. If you do this, you can achieve anything.

Soha : I'd like to read all of the poem!

Reading : Rudyard Kipling's Poem "If"

If you can keep your head when all about you Are losing theirs and blaming it on you; If you can trust yourself when all men doubt you, But make allowance for their doubting too: If you can wait and not be tired by waiting, Or, being lied about, don't deal in lies, Or being hated don't give way to hating,	***build'em*** *:* build them ***deal in*** *:* do business with
And yet don't look too good, nor talk too wise; If you can dream – and not make dreams your master; If you can think – and not make thoughts your aim, If you can meet with Triumph and Disaster And treat those two impostors just the same: If you can bear to hear the truth you've spoken Twisted by knaves to make a trap for fools, Or watch the things you gave your life to, broken, And stoop and build'em up with worn-out tools; If you can talk with crowds and keep your virtue, Or walk with Kings – nor lose the common touch, If neither foes nor loving friends can hurt you, If all men count on you, but none too much: If you can fill the unforgiving minute With sixty seconds' worth of distance run, Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it, And – which is more – you'll be a Man, my son!	***give way to*** *:* allow ***twisted*** *:* changed the meaning ***knave*** *:* a man who is not honest ***Stoop*** *:* walk with your head forward and down ***the common touch*** *:* the ability to be friendly to ordinary people

Definitions

grow up	develop from being a child to being an adult.
inspiring	making someone want to do or achieve something.
unforgiving	difficult, not kind
worth	the amount that could be produced in that time.
bear	bravely accept or deal with a painful or difficult situation.
make your head	remain calm in a difficult situation
lose your head	don't remain calm in a difficult situation
make allowances for	consider someone's behaviour in a kind way because they have a problem or disadvantage
virtue	a good moral quality that someone has,
aim	what you are hoping to achieve

worn-out	damaged because it has been used so much
impostor	someone who pretends to be someone else

Language Notes

- **hear of / about** يسمع عن - I haven't heard of this author before.
hear from يتلقي أخبار من - I haven't heard from my uncle for a month.

- **so** (صفة / ظرف) **that ......** لدرجة ان
- I liked the film so much that I decided to read a book about the author.

- **minute** (60 seconds) دقيقة - Wait a minute! please.
minute (very small) صغير جدا - I can't read his handwriting. It's minute.

- **foolish** (adj.) أحمق - He is foolish. / He's a foolish man.
fool (noun) أحمق - He is a fool. / They are just some fools.

- **wait for** ينتظر - They're waiting for the bus.
await ينتظر - A surprise is awaiting him.

- **lie** lied lied يكذب - I'm sure he lied / was lying to us.
lie lay lain يرقد / تقع - He lied on the floor and cried.

- **think of / about** يفكر في - Can you think of a solution to our problem?
think of يراعي شعور الآخرين - You should think of your neighbours.

- **blame** ..... **for** .... يلوم شخص علي شيء - He blamed her for the noise.
blame ...... **on** .... يرجع اللوم علي شخص - He blamed the noise on her.

- **bear** تلد (bore – born) - Where were you born?
bear يتحمل (bore – borne) - This man is boring, I can't bear him.

عندما نستخدم عبارات طويلة كصفات قبل الاسم فاننا نستخدم شرطة قصيرة a hyphen

- It is a friendly – looking horse.
- He is a cheerful- looking man.
- I live in a ten- year old house.
- I have a four-metre-long ladder.
- They are easy –to remember rules.
- They are difficult – to forget people.

الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف المفعول والمنتهية بـ ing تصف الفاعل

- My friend Ali is so boring. I always gets bored quickly with him.
- The cat was so frightened. The dog was so big and frightening.

Language Functions

Asking about dreams and ideas	Answers
What would your dream job be ?	I'd choose to be ………..
If you could have any job you liked, what would you choose ?	My dream job would be ……….. I couldn't be a ….. because …….
Would you prefer to be a leader or a member of a team?	I'd definitely be ……..……..
	I'd really like to be …………….

✍ *Choose the correct answer:*

1- It takes about seventeen years for an elephant to grow ……………….. .
a) up **b) down** **c) about** **d) off**

2- Life in the desert can be very ……………. . It's often extremely hot and dry.
a) forgiving **b) unforgiving** **c) forgiveness** **d) forgiven**

3- Each year the teacher puts a year's ….…. of paper in the classroom cupboard.
a) value **b) useful** **c) worth** **d) view**

4- We all wanted to climb a mountain after the mountaineer's talk. It's very …… .
a) invention **b) inspiring** **c) motivation** **d) modiefied**

5- We realized that he isn't the king. He's just an ……… who looks like the king.
a) impostor **b) honest postman** **c) honourable man** **d) efficient**

6- You'll have an hour for the test but I'll make ……….. for Tarek as he's been ill.
a) allow **b) allowance** **c) acceptance** **d) resistance**

7- The ……………. of this lesson is to practise some of the new vocabulary.
a) name **b) address** **c) e-mail** **d) aim**

8- It is a ……………….. to be kind to people.
a) vice **b) virtual** **c) virtue** **d) venture**

9- The people, in the castle, used to be the king's .... but now they're his friends.
a) fairies **b) foes** **c) fool** **d) foolish**

10- We only have ………………. tools which don't work very well.
a) worn-out **b) worn-on** **c) worn-off** **d) worn-down**

11- This man is boring so I can't ……………. him any longer.
a) pear **b) beer** **c) beet** **d) bear**

12- I thought today's lesson was ……………. I really want to find out more.
a) inspired **b) aspiring** **c) inspiring** **d) boring**

13- The weather here is very ………. in winter. It can be cold and dark for months.
a) unforgiven **b) forgiven** **c) forgiving** **d) unforgiving**

14- It was very difficult climbing the mountain. We felt ….. when we returned home.
a) exhausting **b) tiring** **c) exhausted** **d) boring**

15- This book is very …………….. . I don't think I'll finish it.
a) boring **b) interesting** **c) bored** **d) interested**

16- Soha didn't want to watch the film about dinosaurs as she easily gets ....
a) frightened b) frightening c) happy d) pleased
17- " The Jungle Book " is a story about a boy who .... up in the jungle.
a) grows b) brings c) makes d) looks
18- I have heard .... this story, but I haven't seen it.
a) in b) of c) off d) from
19- The Jungle Book is .... story.
a) really a good b) a good really c) a really good d) really good
20- The Jungle Book was written by an English writer .... Rudyard Kipling.
a) calling b) was calling c) is called d) called
21- I liked the film .... much that I decided to read a book about the author.
a) so b) such c) too d) very
22- He wrote children's books, books for .... and poems.
a) babies b) toddlers c) kids d) adults
23- He became the .... of the school newspaper.
a) teacher b) doctor c) editor d) article
24- Would you prefer to live in a big city or to live in the .... ?
a) cinema b) countryside c) supermarket d) beach
25- The family decided .... to England.
a) to return b) returning c) return d) to being returned
26- I want to do .... at everything.
a) good b) will c) well d) bad
27- The poem Rudyard wrote was very ....
a) inspiration b) conspiring c) aspire d) inspiring
28- He is able to create new ideas. He is ....
a) coward b) lazy c) imaginative d) boring
29- Young men often takes a lot of .... from watching athletes in the olympics.
a) inspire b) aspiration c) inspiration d) conspiracy
30- Fatima is a very .... person. She's never unhappy with people for very long.
a) forgiving b) unforgiving c) forging d) forbid
31- He's making me furious and I'm going to .... my head.
a) miss b) waste c) lose d) get
32- Mr Hesham is a reliable person so I can .... him.
a) confident b) confidence c) trust d) rely
33- Can you .... allowances for their doubting you?
a) do b) make c) take d) give
34- A true Muslim can't tell .... He is honest.
a) the truth b) the fact c) the difference d) lies
35- If you're going to witness in front of the judge, you'll swear to tell the ....
a) lies b) lying c) truth d) false

36- Envy, grudge, malice and ……………….. are social diseases.

a) hatred b) love c) tolerance d) altruism

37- Floods, earthquakes, volcanoes and hurricanes are natural …………… .

a) good b) goodness c) benefits d) disasters

38- The writer should be an ………….. person to be able to create new ideas.

a) unimaginative b) imaginary c) fictional d) imaginative

39- Don't be so …………….. . You are wise and you should be calm.

a) quiet b) nervous c) nerves d) meek

40- If you are in a tight corner, you should keep your ……………. .

a) arm b) head c) hand d) nose

41- He is writing wonderful books . He is an …………………… author.

a) unforgiving b) interested c) imaginative d) impostor

42- My father once told me that he had many ….. but he managed to defeat them.

a) employers b) employees c) friends d) foes

43- It is not a good idea to interfere when you hear two of your friends …...……… .

a) argued b) arguing c) to argue d) argument

44- Alfred Hitchcock 's works as a film director are ……………… watching.

a) worth b) deserve c) wortheless d) worse

45- This noise is too loud. I can't …………… it any more.

a) hear b) bear c) see d) continue

46- I don't know why his clothes are ………………. so quickly.

a) worn away b) worn off c) worn out d) worn on

47- My father is a very ….....… soldier. He always faces danger without hesitation.

a) careless b) cowardly c) weak d) brave

48- You should have an ………………. and try hard to achieve it.

a) aim b) air c) aids d) alley

49- You shouldn't ………………… to people even if they do the same.

a) lie b) lay c) lain d) lied

50- Stories about scientists and inventors should ………………. our students.

a) aspire b) conspire c) inspire d) spire

51- The word "worn out" is similar in meaning to the word ……………….. .

a) new b) damaged c) orginal d) dressed

52- The book is so long but if you read it until the end, you'll find it ……………. .

a) interesting b) interest c) interested d) interester

53- I wish all my nightmares ………………… come true.

a) would b) will c) wouldn't d) won't

54- He is rich but he pretends that he's in bad need of money. He's an ………… .

a) ancestor b) poster c) inposter d) imposter

55- "Strength" is a noun, but "………………" is a verb.

a) strange b) strongly c) strong d) strengthen

Language Focus

Participle clauses

- **هى مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بـ (V.ing) و تستخدم بدلا من جملة كاملة مبنية للمعلوم :**

- **When she opened** the door, she saw all her friends.
  = **Opening the door**, she saw all her friends.

- **إذا كانت الجملة منفية نضع (not) قبل الـ (V.ing) :**

- She pretended to be ill because **she didn't want** to go to school.
  = **Not wanting to go to school**, she pretended to be ill.

- **تستخدم هذه العبارات بدلا من جملة كاملة تبدأ بـ (When / While / As / and) :**

- **Driving into town**, the man saw an accident.
  = **As** / **When** the man was driving into town, he saw an accident.
- The car crashed into a garden, **knocking down a tree**.
  = The car crashed into a garden **and** knocked down a tree.

- **كما تستخدم هذه العبارات بدلا من جملة دالة على السبب بها (because / since / as) :**

- I travel a lot because I work as a sales representative.
  = **Working as a sales representative**, I get to travel a lot.

- **تستخدم هذه العبارات أيضا بدلا من جملة صفة تبدأ بضمير وصل مستخدم بدلا من فاعل :**

- The boy **who carried** a very heavy bag asked me for help.
  = The boy **carrying** a very heavy bag asked me for help.
  = **Carrying** a very heavy bag. the boy asked me for help.

- **ملحوظة هامة : لكى نبدأ بعبارة أولها (V.ing) يجب أن يكون الفاعل فى الجملتين واحد :**

- **I** heard the phone ring and **I** picked it up.
  = Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.

- **و لكن لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :**
  - Waiting for John, I made some tea.
  - I saw him waiting for John.

- **ملحوظة اضافية :إذا كانت الجملة التى تبدأ بضمير الوصل مبنية للمجهول نحذف ضمير الوصل و (be) و نترك التصريف الثالث بعد الاسم كصفة :**

- We read the e-mail that had been sent by the manager.
  = We read the e-mail sent by the manager.

- **أو نضع العبارة التى تبدأ بالتصريف الثالث فى بداية الجملة إذا كان الفاعل فى الجملتين واحد :**

- They were shocked by the tragedy and didn't know what to say.
  = Shocked by the tragedy, they didn't know what to say.

- **نستخدم العبارات التى تبدأ بـ (V.ing) أو (P.P) لكى يكون هناك تنوع فى تراكيب اللغة :**

- The girl who was injured in the accident was taken to hospital.
  = The girl injured in the accident was taken to hospital.
  = Injured in the accident, The girl was taken to hospital.

✍ ***Choose the correct answer:***

1- …………… his diary, he discovered that he had three meetings.
a) Check b) Checking c) To check d) Checks

2- …………… the station late, she missed her train.
a) Reach b) To reach c) Reaching d) Reaches

3- Rami wrote my address in his notebook, …………….. the pen I had lent him.
a) leave b) left c) to leave d) leaving

4- ……………….. the road at a corner, the car hit a tree and stopped.
a) Going b) Gone c) Go d) Goes

5- Her grandfather used to to lay in the garden, ………………. the newspaper.
a) read b) reading c) reads d) red

6- ………………… a loud noise, they looked up and saw hundreds of small birds.
a) Hearing b) Heard c) Hear d) To hear

7- …………………… up in India , he developed a love of the markets people.
a) Grown b) Grow c) Growing d) Grows

8- …………………… the meaning of the word oar, Hatem asked his teacher.
a) knowing b) known c) know d) Not knowing

9- The bird flew away, …………………. a very loud noise.
a) mading b) making c) makes d) made

10-………………….. the top of the hill , he was amazed by the wonderful view.
a) Climbing b) Climbed c) Climb d) Climber

11- She only eats cakes ……………………… by her mother.
a) mading b) making c) makes d) made

12- He travelled abroad ……………….. his wife alone in Egypt.
a) leaving b) lefting c) leaves d) left

13- ……………….. the button, the lift moved up to the third floor.
a) Push b) Pushed c) Pushing d) Pushes

14…………………… out his notebook, he began to write a poem.
a) Taken b) Taking c) Took d) Not taking

15- The man …………………. the car is a friend of mine.
a) drove b) drived c) driven d) driving

16- ………………. too many fats, you damage your health.
a) Eat b) To eat c) Eating d) Eats

17- …………………… the robbers break into the building, she called the police.
a) Seen b) Seeing c) saw d) Had seen

18- Lorries ………………… over the bridge have to be careful of the wind.
a) come b) coming c) came d) coma

19- ………………. nothing left to do, Mona went home.
a) Having b) Had c) Been having d) Have

20- ………………. I was going to be late home, I phoned my parents.

a) Realise b) Realised c) Realising d) Realises

21- ………………. the first drops of rain, he began to run back down the hill.

a) Feeling b) Feel c) Felt d) Felting

22- He worked for a local newspaper, often ……………. of stories in the evening.

a) think b) thinking c) thinked d) thought

23- ……………………, the criminal was handcuffed and taken to prison quickly.

a) Arrest b) Arresting c) arrested d) Being arrested

24- I live in a 30- storey skyscraper ………………….. the Nile.

a) overlooks b) overlooking c) overlooked d) being overlooked

25- …………………… accused of robbing the bank, he was sent to prison.

a) Be b) Been c) Being d) Begin

26- Hany, …………. to know what the homework was, phoned a friend to ask him.

a) needing b) needs c) needed d) need

27- ………………… killed, the man was taken to the morgue.

a) Finding b) Found c) Finded d) findation

28- ……………….. my bedroom door, it was robbed.

a) Closing b) Closed c) Not closing d) Not closed

29- ……………….. my name at the top of my work, I gave it to the teacher.

a) Written b) Write c) Writing d) Wrote

30- We met yesterday on the beach, ……………….. football.

a) playing b) played c) plays d) play

Exercises on Unit 16

2- Read the passage then answer the questions:

It's impossible in the modern world for a man of science to say with any honesty, "My business is to provide knowledge and what use is made of the knowledge is not my responsibility". The knowledge that a man of science provides may fall into the hands of evil men. Institutions that follow completely unworthy aims may seize the scientist's findings. Men of science can't altogether prevent **this.** Men of science can emphasize the value of those branches of science which have beneficial uses rather than harmful ones. Imagine what might be done if the money at present spent on arms and weapons were spent on increasing the world's food supply and reducing the pressure of population. In ten or twenty years, poverty and hunger could be ended.

As the world becomes more unified by technology, life in an ivory tower becomes increasingly impossible. The scientist can no longer cut himself off from the rest of human activity. Scientists have to show courage to prevent disaster.

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- The expression "cut himself off from" means …………………… .

a) be isolated from b) work with c) be close to d) cooperate with

2- The underlined word "**this**" in the first paragraph refers to ………………. .

a) making discoveries **b) providing knowledge**

c) seizing findings **d) preventing discoveries**

3- Scientists should take part in ………………… disasters.

a) causing **b) making** **c) emphasizing** **d) avoiding**

4- A man of science in the modern world should be ……………….. .

a) dangerous **b) risky** **c) inventive** **d) courageous**

B) Answer the following questions :

5- What can happen to the knowledge that a man of science provides?

6- How should the money spent on arms and weapons be used?

7- Which do you prefer: to live in isolation of others or to mix with them? Why?

8- Give suitable title to the passage.

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Why do so many people feel the need to make fun of and judge others? This question crosses my mind daily. I wonder why we, as humans, feel the need to judge and ***degrade*** others. It's human nature to compare ourselves to others, whether it's to our family members, peers or even celebrities we see in the media. We base our judgments of ourselves and others on these comparisons. Judging others sometimes gives people a sense of prestige as demeaning others can create a false sense of security and identity. No two people are completely alike. We need to accept these differences and stop judging people. It's hurtful to **them** and makes the people ridiculing them look bad. In fact, I find myself judging others more often than not. I think it's unfair for me to draw conclusions and opinions about others without knowing them. I hear people say things about others all the time without consequences and this encourages them to continue getting their laughs through other peoples' pain. It's hard to listen to, but it can be stopped. As young adults, it's our duty to make a conscience effort to be more accepting towards others' differences, especially at college.

A) Choose the correct answer

1. The underlined word ' them' refers to those who ……………….. .

a) laugh at people b) are being laughed

c) go to college d) ridicule people

2. The writer wants us to be ………………… .

a) tolerant b) aggressive c) greedy d) critics

3. The word *degrade* means ……………….. .

a) to lower in dignity b) to give prestige

c. to give position d) to honour

4. At schools, students compare themselves to their ………………… .

a) peers b) families c. celebrities d) teachers

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Give a suitable title to the passage.
6. What makes people continue laughing at others?
7. What are our judgment of ourselves and the others based on?
8. Where should young adults accept the other's differences?

3- Write an essay of 180 words about one of the following:

1- Forgiveness 2- Your aim in life.

4- A) Translate into Arabic :

1- Success in life depends on patience and hard work. A student who starts learning his lessons from the beginning of the year will find no difficulty in passing his examination.

2- A poor man was once wrongly imprisoned. Years later, he was set free and given a sum of money as compensation for the imprisonment. He went straight to the market and bought all the birds in cages and set them free.

3- Science can help us improve health, food production and nearly every aspect of our lives.

4- Modern science has created new problems such as global warming and environmental pollution.

5- Millions of people are suffering very badly from hunger in the poorer countries of the world.

6- The world produces enough food to feed everyone, but it doesn't reach all those who need it.

B) Translate into English:

1- يعمل الناس فى وظائف مختلفة، وعندما ينقضى عمل اليوم فإن لكل منهم وقت فراغه، والناس يختلفون فى الأسلوب الذين يقضون به وقت فراغهم، فالبعض يستفيد بشكل جيد منه ويقضونه بطريقة سارة، وآخرون يضيعونه لا يعلمون كم هو قيم.

2- الانضباط هو ضرورة فى الحياة، فلا يمكن للشخص بدون الانضباط أن يحقق شيئاً ذو قيمة، وكذلك يحتاج الطالب الى الانضباط لكى يحقق النجاح والتفوق.

3- يخاطر المغامرون بحياتهم من أجل الشهرة والمال أو من أجل قهر الصعاب و ربما يكون حلم يراودهم مدى الحياة و يسعوا لتحقيقه.

4- الماء هو شريان الحياة لذا يجب الحفاظ على كل قطرة منه، كما يجب أن نغير بعض عاداتنا السيئة التى تسبب اهدار كميات كبيرة من المياه.

5- ينبغى أن يتحلى القائد الجيد بالحكمة والصبر لاتخاذ القرارات المناسبة، كما يجب أن يتحلى بالأمانة والصدق وأن يفضل مصلحة الجميع على المصالح الفردية.

6- فى المستقبل القريب سيتمكن العلماء من تطوير أدوية جديدة لعلاج الأمراض المزمنة و سوف يؤدى ذلك الى تخفيف الآلام عن المرضى.

Chapter 5

Vocabulary

good education	تعليم جيد	strange	غريب
improve	يحسن	doll	دمية / عروسة
rats	جرذان / فئران	puppet	دمية متحركة
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	small request	طلب صغير
lines	تجاعيد	bow	ينحنى
hire	يستأجر	mathematics	علم الرياضيات
private	خصوصى	trick	خدعة / حيلة
pack	يحزم (حقائب)	enemy	عدو
pointing to	مشيرا الى	clearly	بوضوح
inn	فندق صغير / نُزل	intelligent	ذكى
the public	عامة الشعب	rest (v)	يستريح
wooden box	صندوق خشبى	set off	ينطلق / يبدأ رحلة
strangers	غرباء	enormous	هائل
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	exhausted	مرهق / منهك
breathe	يتنفس	exhausting	يسبب الارهاق
size	حجم	reply	يرد
get down	ينزل الى	signs	لافتات
hard floor	ارض صلبة	cruel	قاس\ وحشى
branch	فرع	human	انسانى
cupboard	دولاب	perform	يمثل / يؤدى دور
trousers	بنطلون	succeed in	ينجح فى
prepare	يجهز	swords	سيوف
within	فى خلال	thick door	باب ضخم
handkerchief	منديل / غطاء رأس	clap	يصفق
giants	عملاق	large rock	صخرة ضخمة
advertise	يعلن	own land	موطنه
baby giant	طفل رضيع عملاق	capital	عاصمة
blanket	بطانية	comfortable	مريح
closely	بإحكام	education	التعلم
sew	يخيط	lose weight	يفقد وزن
land	يضع / يهبط	completely	تماما
immediately	فى الحال	necessary	ضرورى
seem	يبدو	put up	يرفع
explain	يفسر	join	يلتحق بـ

Text and Quotations

1. I was in a room full of giants and a baby giant had just dropped me some ten metres from the ground. The fall would surely have broken my neck, but I was lucky. I did not hit the hard floor but landed in a soft blanket which the mother held around the baby. When I landed in the blanket, the children laughed loudly again, and even the baby joined them. Only the farmer seemed to realise I could have been killed. He picked me up and looked at me closely to see if I was hurt. It was strange to see his face so close. When he smiled at me, I could see great big lines in his skin and his hairs looked like the branches of small trees. Did I look like this to the little people of Lilliput? The farmer then said something to his wife and he went outside. The wife carefully picked me up and carried me to a bed, where she put me down with a handkerchief over my legs. When she left me, I suddenly realised how tired I was.

كنت فى غرفة مليئة بالعمالقة وأفلتتنى طفلة عملاقة من على أرتفاع بعض عشرات المترات من الارض، وهذه الوقعة كانت بالتأكيد ستكسر عُنقى، ولكنى كنت محظوظاص اننى لم أصطدم بالأرض الصلبة ولكنى هبطت على بطانية ناعمة كانت الأم تلفها حول الطفلة، وعندما هبطت على البطانية، ضحك الاطفال بصوت عالٍ مرة أخرى، وحتى الطفلة الرضيعة ضحكت معهم، يبدو ان الفلاح فقط ادرك أنه كان من الممكن ان أُقتل، التقطنى ونظر الي عن قرب ليرى اذا كنت قد أُصبت، لقد كان غريباً أن أرى وجهه عن قرب، فعندما ابتسم لى، رأيت خطوط كبيرة وضخمة فى بشرته وكان شعره يبدو مثل أفرع الاشجار الصغيرة، هل كنت ابدو هكذا بالنسبة لشعب ليليبوت الصغير؟ ثم قال الفلاح شيئاً ما الى زوجته وذهب الى الخارج، التقطتنى الزوجة بحرص وحملتنى الى سريرن حيث وضعتنى ووضعت منديل على قدمي، وعندما تركتنى، أكتشفت فجأة الى أى مدى كنت متعباً.

2. I slept well but dreamt of my family, which made me feel very sad when I woke up some hours later. I looked around me and found that I was alone on an enormous bed in a giant room. The bed was perhaps eight metres high and I did not know how to get down to the floor. I thought about calling out to the farmer's wife, but my voice would be too quiet for anyone to hear through the great thick door to the room. Suddenly I saw two rats, the size of two large dogs, running across the floor and towards the bed. When they saw me, they easily jumped up onto the bed and began to attack me. One succeeded in holding onto my sleeve with its teeth, which were the size of swords. I held up my knife to defend myself and succeeded in hurting the rat, which gave a loud cry as it quickly let go and ran away. Its horrible friend looked surprised, then worried, and followed it off the bed and then out of the room through some hole that I could not see.

نمت جيداً لكننى حلمت بعائلتى، وهذا جعلنى أشعر بالحزن الشديد عندما استيقظت بعد بعض الساعات، نظرت حولى وأدركت أننى كنت وحدى على سرير ضخم فى غرفة عملاقة، كان أرتفاع السرير تقريباً ثمانية أمتار ولم أعرف كيف انزل الى الارض، فكرت فى ان أنادى زوجة الفلاح بصوت عالٍ، ولكن صوتى سوف يكون منخفضاً جداً لدرجة أن لا أحد سوف يسمعنى

عبر باب الغرفة السميك جداً، وفجأة رأيت فأران، فى حجم كلبان كبيران، يجرون عبر ارضية الغرفة ومتجهين ناحية السرير، عندما رأونى، صعدا الى السرير بسهولة وبدءا يهاجمانى، نجح أحدهما أن يمسك أكمامى بأسنانه التى كانت فى حجم السيوف، أمسكت بسكينتى لكى أدافع عن نفسى ونجحت فى أذية أحدهما والذى اطلق صرخة مدوية وسرعان ما تركته يذهب فهرب أما صديقه المزعور فقد بدا مندهشاً، ثم قلقاً، واتبعه من فوق السرير ومن ثم خارج الغرفة من خلال فتحة ما لم أستطع أن أراها.

3. When the farmer's wife entered the room a few minutes later, she looked very surprised to see me sitting on the bed with a knife. Through signs I tried to explain what had happened. She seemed to understand, and took me outside into the garden so I could breathe some fresh air. That evening, the farmer's daughter, Glumdalclitch, who was nine years old, helped her mother to prepare a tiny bed for me. They put the bed on a low shelf inside a cupboard, which was to be my bedroom for the time I stayed with these people, a place that was safe from any rats. The young girl loved sewing, and she made me clothes and dressed me like a doll. Within a few days she had made me seven shirts and four pairs of trousers. She also taught me her language by pointing to things and telling me what they were called. She was very kind and called me Grildrig, a name that all her family used for me. I later found out that the name means "puppet".

عندما دخلت زوجة الفلاح الى الغرفة بعد بضع دقائق، أندهشت جداً عندما رأتنى جالساً على السرير ومعى سكينة، ومن خلال الاشارات حاولت ان أشرح ما حدث، يبدو أنها فهمت، واخذتنى الى الخارج فى الحديقة لذلك تمكنت من أن أتنفس بعض الهواء النقى، وفى هذا المساء قامت ابنة الفلاح، جلومدالكليتش، والتى كان عمرها تسع سنوات، بمساعدة أمها فى تجهيز سرير صغير جداً من أجلى، ثم وضعوا السرير على رف منخفض داخل دولاب، والذى سيكون غرفة نومى أثناء وقت تواجدى مع هؤلاء الناس، وكان مكاناً آمناً من أى فئران، كانت البنت الصغيرة تحب الخياطة، وصنعت لى ملابس والبستنى مثل الدُمية، وخلال بضع أيام صنعت لى سبعة قمصان وأربع بنطلونات، لقد علمتنى أيضاً لغتهم من خلال الاشارة الى الاشياء واخبارى ماذا يسمونهم، كانت طيبة جداً وكانت تنادينى جريلدريج، وهو الاسم الذى استخدمه كل أفراد العائلة لمناداتى، أكتشفت فيما بعد أن هذا الاسم يعنى "دُمية".

4. After a few weeks, all the farmer's neighbours had heard that he had found a tiny human that could speak and walk and do what he was asked. One day, an old man who was a friend of the farmer arrived and asked to see me. So the farmer put me on his kitchen table and told me to talk to the farmer. ***"How are you, sir?"*** I said to the old man. ***"I'm very pleased to meet you."*** Then I did what he asked me to do: I walked up and down and named the objects that he pointed to in their language: ***"That's a chair. This is a table, and that's a window."***

وبعد بضع أسابيع، كان كل جيران الفلاح قد سمعوا أنه وجد إنسان صغير يمكنه الكلام والمشى وفعل ما يُطلب منه، ذات يوم وصل رجل عجوز وكان صديقاً للفلاح وطلب أن يرانى، لذلك وضعنى الفلاح على ترابيزة المطبخ وطلب منى أن أتكلم مع الفلاح، قلت للعجوز: "كيف حالك، يا سيدى؟ انا مسرور جداً بلقائك." وبعد ذلك فعلت ما طلب منى أن أفعله: مشيت ذهاباً وإياباً

وسميت الاشياء التى أشار اليها بلغتهم: "ذلك كرسى، هذه ترابيزة، وتلك نافذة."

5. The old man put on his glasses to see me better, but when I looked at him I thought that his eyes look like two giant moons seen through two enormous windows, and this made me laugh. The old man looked angry. ***"Why is this little man laughing at me? Does he think he's being clever? He shouldn't be so rude."*** he said to the farmer. Although the farmer tried to explain why I was laughing, he did not look happy. ***"Well if he's so clever, you should make him work so that you can earn some money from him."*** The farmer thought about this. ***"How can I do that?"*** he asked. ***"Why don't you take him to the market? There are plenty of people there who would pay good money to see this little man walking and talking."*** Unfortunately, the farmer agreed. ***"You know, that's a really good idea. It's market day tomorrow. I'll take him there and do what you suggest."***

وضع العجوز نظارته لكى يرانى بطريقة أفضل، ولكن عندما نظرت اليه ضننت ان عيناه تشبهان قمرين عملاقين تراهما من خلال نافذتين عملاقتين، وهذا جعلنى أضحك، غضب العجوز وقال للفلاح: "لماذا يسخر منى هذا الانسان الصغير؟ هل يظن نفسه ماهراً؟ لا ينبغى له أن يكون بهذه الوقاحة." وعلى الرغم من أن الفلاح حاول أن يشرح لماذا كنت أضحك، لم يبدو سعيداً أيضاً، "حسناً، ان كان ماهراً جداً يجب أن تجعله يعمل لكى تكسب بعض المال من وراءه." فكر الفلاح فى هذا، ثم تساءل: "كيف أفعل هذا؟" "لمل لا تأخذه الى السوق؟ يوجد كثير من الناس هناك سوف يدفعون مالاً جيداً لكى يروا هذا الانسان الصغير يمشى ويتكلم." ولسوء الحظ وافق الفلاح: "هل تعلم أن هذه فكرة جيدة حقاً، غداً يوم السوق، سوف ءأخذه هناك وأفعل ما تقترح."

6. When Glumdalclitch heard about these plans, she was very worried about me. ***"Father, what if the people at the market are cruel to Grildrig? They'll want to pick him up and play with him. They might break his arms or drop him! I don't want him to perform to strangers." "He'll be fine. Just think of the money we can get for him!"*** said the farmer. ***"Let me come with you, then. I can be Grildrig's guard, to check that people don't hurt him." "Very well."*** said the farmer. Glumdalclitch looked pleased to hear her father agree. The next day, the farmer and Glumdalclitch put me in a small wooden box for the half-hour ride to the market in a nearby town. The box had three small holes in it for me to breathe, and also so I could look out. Although Glumdalclitch had put some of her dolls' soft blankets on the floor of the box, it was a very uncomfortable journey for me. The horse went about fourteen metres with each step and the box moved so much that I felt as if I was on a ship in a storm.

عندما سمعت جلومدالكليتش بهذه الخطط أصبحت قلقلة جداً بشأنى: "أبى، ماذا لو كان الناس فى السوق قاسيين مع جريلدريج، سوف يريدون أن يحملوه ويلعبون به، ربما يكسرون ذراعه أو يسقطونه، أنا لا أريده أن يقوم بهذا هذا أمام الغرباء" فقال الفلاح: "سيكون بخير، فقط فكرى فى المال الذى سنجنيه من عمله!" "دعنى إذاً ءأتى معك، يمكننى أن أكون حارس لجلريدريج، حتى أتأكد أن هؤلاء الناس لا يؤذوه" فقال الفلاح: "جيد جداً" كانت جلومدالكليتش سعيدة عندما

سمعت موافقة والدها، وفى اليوم التالى، وضعنى الفلاح وجلومدالكليتش فى صندوق خشبى صغير لمدة نصف ساعة ركوباً الى السوق فى مدينة مجاورة، كان بالصندوق ثلاث فتحات لكى أتنفس، وكذلك لكى أتمكن من النظر للخارج، وعلى الرغم من أن جلومدالكليتش وضعت بعض البطاطين الناعمة الخاصة بالدُمى على أرضية الصندوق، كانت الرحلة غير مريحة بالمرة بالنسبة لى، كان الحصان يقطع 14 متراً فى كل خطوة، وكان الصندوق يتحرك كثيراً لدرجة أننى شعرت كما لو أننى كنت فى سفينة أثناء عاصفة.

7. Finally we arrived at an inn next to the market, where the farmer asked a friend to advertise what he had inside the box: a tiny human who could say things and perform for the public. I was put on a table in the largest room inside the inn. Glumdalclitch sat on a low stool next to me, to look after me and to tell me what to do. The farmer allowed thirty people at a time to come into the room to see me. My job was to welcome the people when they came into the room, and I walked up and down when I was asked. I answered Glumdalclitch's questions using the words that I knew. ***"What's your name?"*** she said. ***"My name's Gulliver, although my friends here call me Grildrig."*** The people watching laughed at this. ***"How high can you jump?"*** asked Glumdalclitch. ***"I can show you."*** I answered, and jumped as high as I could. Again the people laughed.

وفى النهاية وصلنا الى نُزل بجوار السوق، وهناك طلب الفلاح من صديق له أن يعلن عما لديه داخل الصندوق: رجل صغير يستطيع أن يقول أشياء و يفعل أشياء أمام الجماهير، تم وضعى على ترابيزة فى أكبر غرفة داخل النُزل، جلست جلومدالكليتش على كرسى تسريحة بجوارى، لكى تعتنى بى ولكى تخبرنى ماذا أفعل، كان الفلاح يسمح لثلاثون شخصاً كل مرة أن يدخلوا الغرفة ليرونى، كانت وظيفتى هى أن ارحب بالناس عندما يدخلون الغرفة، وأن أمشى ذهاباً وإياباً عندما يُطلب منى ذلك، كنت أُجيب على أسئلة جلومدالكليتش مستخدماً الكلمات التى أعرفها، قالت لى: "ما أسمك؟" "أسمى جلفر، على الرغم من أن أصدقائى هنا ينادونى جريلدريج" ضحك الناس الذين كانوا يشهادونى من هذا، سألتنى جلومدالكليتش: "الى أى أرتفاع يمكنك أن تقفز؟" أجبتها: "يمكننى أن أُريكِ" وقفزت أعلى ما أستطيع، وضحك الناس مرة أخرى.

8. ***"Now tell me, can you name the things in this room?"*** This I did, pointing to the objects around the table. ***"Thank you. Finally, say goodbye to the good people who have come to see you."*** ***"Goodbye everyone, and thank you very much for your visit!"*** I cried, as the people were shown from the room. People in the market soon heard all about the amazing little human inside the inn, and more and more people wanted to see me. Although the farmer stopped people from going too close to me, once a school boy threw a nut at me. It was the size of a large rock and it nearly hit my head. It would surely have killed me, and I was pleased to see that the boy was sent out of the room.

"والآن اخبرنى، هل يمكنك أن تذكر أسماء الأشياء التى بهذه الغرفة؟" ففعلت هذا وأنا أشير الى الأسياء التى حول الترابيزة، "شكراص لك، وفى النهاية قُل الى اللقاء للناس الطيبين الذين أتوا ليروك" وبينما كان يثشار للناس بالخروج قلت: "الى اللقاء جميعاً، وشكراً جزيلاً على زيارتكم" وسرعان ما سمع الناس فى السوق كا شيئ عن الانسان الصغير المذهل داخل النُزل، ورغب أناس

أكثر وأكثر فى رؤيته، وعلى الرغم من أن الفلاح منع الناس من الاقتراب جداً منى، ذات مرة رمانى أحد أولاد المدارس بواحدة من جوز الهند، كانت فى حجم صخرة كبيرة، وتقريباً أصطدمت برأسى، من المؤكد أنها كانت ستقتلنى، وكنت سعيداً عندما رأيت الولد يُطرد من الغرفة.

----

9. During my time in that room, I was shown to twelve different groups of people and did the same things for each group. When my work was finally finished, I was exhausted. The farmer put up a sign saying that we would return the next day, but I was so tired when I got back to the farmer's house that I had to rest for three days. However, even at the farmer's home I could not rest completely. All the farmer's neighbours had now heard of me, and each day, people paid the farmer to come and see me in his home. There were at least thirty people in his house at any time, usually other farmers with their wives and children of all ages.

اثناء الوقت الذى قضيته فى تلك الغرفة، قمت بعروض امام أثنا عشر مجموعة مختلفة من الناس وقمت بنفس الأشياء أمام كل مجموعة، وعندما أنتهى عملى أخيراً، كنت متعباً جدا، وضع الفلاح لافتة تقول أننا سنعود فى اليوم التالى، ولكننى كنت كتعباً جداً عندما عدنا الى بيت الفلاح لدرجة أننى كنت فى حاجة الى الراحة لمدة ثلاثة أيام، ومع هذا، لم أستطع أن أستريح تماماً حتى فى بيت الفلاح، فقد سمع كل جيران الفلاح عنى الآن، ودفع الناس للفلاح لكى يأتوا ويرونى فى بيته، ففى اى وقت كان يوجد ما لا يقل عن ثلاثون شخصاً فى بيته، عادةً كانوا فلاحين آخرين بزوجاتهم وابنائهم فى كل الاعمار.

10. The farmer was very happy because he was now getting a lot of money, and he decided it would be a good idea to take me to all the cities in the land so he could show me to even more people. He packed all the things necessary for a long journey, and on 17th August 1703, the farmer, Glumdalclitch and I set off for the capital city. It was about three thousand kilometres from the farm where I had stayed to the capital, and I was carried in the box which Glumdalclitch had now filled with many more of her dolls' soft blankets to make it more comfortable.

كان الفلاح سعيداً جداً لأنه الآن يحصل على الكثير من المال، وقرر أنها ستكون فكرة جيدة أن يأخذنى الى كل المدن فى ارضهم لكى يرانى أناس اكثر، فقد جهز كل الأشياء الضرورية الى رحلة طويلة، وفى السابع عشر من شهر أغسطس عام 1703، أنطلقنا أنا والفلاح وجلومدالكيلتش الى العاصمة، لقد كانت المسافة حوالى 3000 كيلومتر من المزرعة التى كنت أعيش فيها الى العاصمة، وقد حُملت فى صندوق ملئته جلومدالكليتش هذه المرة بكثير جداً من البطاطين الناعمة الخاصة بالدُمى لكى تجعل الصندوق أكثر راحة.

11. The farmer planned to show me in all of the towns and some of the villages that we passed on the way to the capital. We stopped at eighteen large towns, many small villages and even some private houses. Perhaps understanding that this was exhausting for me, Glumdalclitch often told her father that she was tired and wanted to rest during the journey. Then she would take me out of the box to give me some air, sometimes spending some time teaching me more of their language. She also liked to show me where we were travelling. I saw many enormous buildings and five or six rivers that were wider than the Nile.

لقد خطط الفلاح ان يعرضنى فى كل المدن وفى بعض القرى التى مررنا بها فى الطريق الى العاصمة، لقد توقفنا فى مانية عشر مدينة كبيرة والعديد من القرى الصغيرة وحتى بعض البيوت الخاصة، ولعل جلومدالكيلتش كانت تفهم أن هذا كان مرهقاً لى فكانت مراراً تخبر والدها أنها متعبة وتحتاج أن تستريح أناء الرحلة، م كانت تخرجنى من الصندوق لكى تعطينى بعض الهواء وأحياناً كانت تقضى بعض الوقت تعلمنى المزيد من لغتهم، وكانت أيضاً تحب أن ترينى أين نحن مسافرون، رأيت الكثير من المبانى الضخمة وخمس أو ست أنهار والتى كانت اوسع من نهر النيل.

12. After ten weeks, we finally arrived in the capital city, which was called Lorbrulgrud. The farmer found a hotel in the main street, not far from the King's palace, and put up signs to advertise what I could do. He hired a room in the hotel with a huge table in the middle where I could perform. And so I appeared every day before the people of the capital. Thanks to Glumdalclitch's language lessons, I could now understand everything the people said, and I knew they were all amazed and happy to see me. The farmer continued to earn lots of money, but unfortunately, the more he earned, the more he wanted people to see me. He did not realize how tiring I found the work. After a few weeks, I had lost a lot of weight and felt ill and tired. The farmer saw that I looked like a skeleton and was worried I would die. But luck was with me, because just when I thought I could not work another day, a servant arrived from the palace and said that the farmer should go at once to show me to the Queen.

بعد عشرة أسابيع، وصلنا أخيراً الى العاصمة، وكان أسمها لوربرولجرد، وجد الفلاح فندقاً فى الشارع الرئيسى، ليس بعيداً عن قصر الملك، ووضع لافتات ليعلن عما يمكننى ان أفعله، استأجر غرفة فى الفندق بترابيزة كبيرة فى وسطها حيث يمكننى أن أقوم بالأدوار، وهكذا كنت أظهر كل يوم أمام سكان العاصمة، وبفضل دروس اللغة من جلومدالكليتش، أصبحت أفهم كل شيئ يقوله الناس، وعرفت أن جميعهم كانوا مذهولين وسعداء لرؤيتى، استمر الفلاح فى جمع الكثير من المال، ولكن لسوء الحظ، كلما جمع أكثر كلما اراد أكثر أن يرانى الناس، فهو لم يدرك الى اى مدى كنت أجد هذا العمل متعباً، وبعد بضع أسابيع، خسرت كثيراً من وزنى وشعرت بالمرض والتعب، لاحظ الفلاح اننى أصبحت أشبه الهيكل العظمى وكان قلقاً أننى قد أموت، ولكن الحظ كان فى صفى، لأنه عندما ظننت أننى لن أستطيع أن اعمل ليوم آخر، وصل خادم من القصر وقال أن الفلاح يجب أن يذهب فى الحال ليعرضنى أمام الملكة.

13. It was a short journey to the enormous palace, where I bowed down to the Queen of the country. ***"I'm very pleased to meet you."*** I cried. She smiled when she saw me and then asked me some questions about my own land and seemed very interested in my replies. ***"I see."*** she said. ***"You are clearly an intelligent person despite your size. Perhaps you'd like to live here, in the palace, with the King and my family?"*** ***"That's a very kind offer."*** I said. ***"However, I belong to the farmer. I would be happy to live with you, but only if the farmer agrees to it."*** The farmer, knowing that I was ill and thinking that perhaps I would soon die, immediately said that he would be happy to sell me for a thousand pieces of gold. The Queen clapped her hands. ***"Go and get me the money he needs."*** she called, and soon servants arrived carrying coins that the farmer

happily took from them. I then bowed down again. ***"I'm very happy now that you're my owner."*** I said. ***"Can I ask one small request? Would you mind letting me keep Glumdalclitch as my teacher? She's been very kind to me and has taught me all I know about your country."***

لقد كانت رحلة قصيرة الى القصر الضخم، حيث انحنيت امام ملكة البلاد، ثم قلت: "أنا سعيد بمقابلتك" ابتسمت عندما رأتنى ثم سألتنى بعض الأسئلة عن بلدى الأصلى وكانت تبدو مهتمة جداً بردودى، ثم قالت: "أفهمك، من الواضح أنك شخص زكى بالرغم من حجمك، ربما تفضل العيش هنا، فى القصر، مع الملك وعائلتى؟" قلت لها: "هذا عرض طيب جداً، ومع هذا، فأنا ملك للفلاح، سأكون مسروراً أن أعيش معكم، ولكن فقط إذا وافق الفلاح" ولأن الفلاح كان يدرك أننى مريض وظن أننى ربما أموت قريباً، قال فى الحال أنه سيكون سعيداً ان يبيعنى مقابل 1000 قطعة ذهبية, صفقت الملكة ونادت: "أذهبوا وأحضروا لى المال المطلوب" وسريعاً وصل الخدم وهم يحملون المعادن التى أخذها الفلاح بسعادة، ثم أنحنيت انا مرة اخرى وقلت: "أنا سعيد جداً الآن أنكِ مليكتى، هل يمكننى أن أطلب طلب صغير؟ هل تمانعى أن تسمحى لى بالاحتفاظ بجلومدالكليتش كمعلمة لى؟ لقد كانت طيبة جداً معى وعلمتنى كل ما أعرف عن بلدكم."

14. The Queen asked the farmer if this was possible, and he agreed, happy that his daughter had a good job in the palace. Glumdalclitch, too, was very excited by this news. ***"Well, it's time I said goodbye to you."*** said the farmer, looking at the big bag of money in his hand. ***"You're a lucky little man, you'll be well looked after here."*** he said to me. I bowed as he left, but did not say anything to him. ***"Why didn't you say goodbye to him?"*** the Queen asked me when the farmer had gone. I told her how hard he had made me work, how he had only wanted to make money from me, and that my health had suffered because of this. ***"He's only sold me to you because he thinks I'll soon die. But I'm sure you'll help me to get better and that my life will be much improved."***

سألت الملكة الفلاح لو ان هذا ممكناً، فوافق وكان سعيداً أن أبنته قد حصلت على وظيفة جيدة فى القصر، كانت جلومدالكليتش أيضاً مسرورة بهذا الخبر، قال الفلاح وهو ينظر فى حقيبة المال الكبيرة فى يده: "حسناً، لقد حان الوقت لأقول الى اللقاء، أنت رجل صغير محظوظ، سوف يتم العناية بك بطريقة جيدة هنا" انحنيت عندما غادر، لكننى لم أقل أى شيئاً له، سألتنى الملكة عندما ذهب الفلاح: "لماذا لم تقل الى اللقاء له؟" أخبرتها الى أى مدى مان يتعبنى فى العمل، والى اى مدى كان فقط يريد أن يجمع المال من ورائى، وأن صحتى ساءت بسبب هذا: "لقد باعنى فقط لأنه ظن أننى سوف أموت قريباً، لكننى متأكد انكِ سوف تساعدينى أن أتحسن وأن حياتى سوف تتحسن كثيراً."

15. Although I could not speak her language very well, the Queen understood all that I said and smiled. She picked me up and carried me carefully to the King, who was in another room in the palace. When the King saw me, he looked at me in surprise. ***"What's this? Why have you brought me a toy?"*** he cried. So the Queen asked me to tell him all about my life, which I did. The King had had a very good education and knew everything about mathematics and the history and geography of his land. He could not believe that what I told him was true. ***"I believe that clever farmer has tricked you into giving him money."*** he said to the Queen. He looked at me angrily. Had I made an enemy already?

بالرغم من اننى لم استطع أن اتكلم لغتها بصورة جيدة جداً، فهمت الملكة كل ما قلت وابتسمت، التقتطنى وحملتنى بحرص الى الملك الذى كان فى غرفة اخرى فى القصر، وعندما رآنى الملك نظر لى بدهشة وصاح: "لماذا أحضرت لعبة أطفال؟" لذلك طلبت منى الملكة أن أخبره كل شيئ عن حياتى، وهذا ما فعلته، كان الملك ذو تعليم جيد جداً، وكان يعرف كل شيئ عن رياضيات وتاريخ وجغرافية بلده، لم يستطع أن يصدق أن ما أخبرته به كان حقيقياً، قال للملكة: "أعتقد أن الفلاح قد خدعك لتعطيه المال" نظر الي بغضب. هل صنعت لى عدوا بالفعل؟

Questions with Model Answers

1- Why was not Gulliver hurt when he fell to the floor? How was he lucky?

✍ Because he didn't hit the hard floor, but landed in a soft blanket.

2- What did Gulliver see when the man looked at him closely?

✍ He saw big lines in his skin and his hairs looked like branches of a tree.

3- Where did the farmer's wife take Gulliver?

✍ She took him to the bed and put a handkerchief over his legs.

4- What did Gulliver dream of? How did he feel?

✍ He dreamt of his family and he felt sad .

5- How high was the bed of the giants?

✍ It was about eight meters high.

6- Why didn't Gulliver know how to get down to the floor?

✍ Because the bed was enormous (8 meters high)

7- What did Gulliver think of to get down to the floor?

✍ He thought of calling out to the farmer's wife.

8- Why didn't he call out for the woman?

✍ Because his voice would be too quiet so no one would hear him.

9- Why wouldn't anyone hear Gulliver's voice?

✍ Because the door was thick.

10- What did he see on the floor?

✍ He saw two rats of the size of two large dogs.

11- What did the rats do?

✍ They jumped on the bed and began to attack Gulliver.

12- What did the teeth of the rat look like?

✍ They were the size of swords.

13- How did Gulliver defend himself?

✍He used his knife and could hurt a rat then the two rats escaped.

14- Why was the farmer's wife surprised when she entered the room?

✍Because she saw Gulliver sitting on the bed holding his knife.

15- How did Gulliver try to explain what happened?

✍ He used signs and the woman understood him.

16- Where did Gulliver get fresh air?

✍ In the garden when the woman took him there.

17- Who was Glumdalclitch ?

✍ She was the farmer's daughter and she was nine years old.

18- What did the wife and her daughter make for Gulliver?

✍ They made him a tiny bed .

19- Where did they put the bed?

✍ They put it on a low shelf inside a cupboard.

20- What was the girl's hobby?

✍ She loved sewing and made Gulliver clothes and dressed him like a doll.

21- How many clothes did the girl make Gulliver?

✍ She made him seven shirts and four pairs of trousers.

22- What did the girl teach Gulliver?

✍ She taught him their language by pointing to things and their names.

23- What did the girl call Gulliver?

✍ She called him " Grildrig" (it means puppet).

24- What did the farmer's neighbours hear of?

✍ They heard that the farmer had found a tiny human that could speak, walk and do what he was asked to do.

25- Who came to the farmer's house to see Gulliver?

✍ An old man who was a friend of the farmer.

26- What did Gulliver say to the visitor?

✍ He said he was pleased to meet him and did what the man asked him to do.

27- How did Gulliver describe the man's eyes?

✍ He said that they looked like two giant moons.

28- Why was the farmer's friend angry?

✍ Because he thought that Gulliver was laughing at him.

29- What did the farmer's friend suggest concerning Gulliver?

✍ He suggested that the farmer could make Gulliver work to earn money for him.

30- What could Gulliver do according to the man's ideas?

✍ The farmer could take him to the market for people to see him.

31- Did the farmer agreed to the suggestion?

✍ Yes, he agreed and said it was a good idea.

32- How was Glumdalclitch's impression?

✍ She was very worried. about Gulliver.

33- What did she tell her father?

✍ She was afraid people might play with Gulliver and break his arms or drop him.

34- What did her father tell her?

✍ He told her he would be fine and asked her to think of the money they might get.

35- What did she suggest ?

✍ She suggested going with them to be Gulliver's guard and her father agreed.

36- Where did the farmer put Gulliver on the way to the market?
✍ They put him in a small wooden box.
37- How long did it take to go to the market?
✍ It was a half-hour ride.
38- Why did the box have three holes?
✍ To help Gulliver breathe and to look out.
39- How did he feel when he was in the box?
✍ He felt as if he were on a ship in a storm because the horse was fast.
40- What was the advertisement say?
✍ There was a tiny human who could say things and perform for the public.
41- Where could people see Gulliver's show?
✍ In an inn next to the market.
42- How many people could see Gulliver at a time?
✍ About thirty people.
43- What was Gulliver's role in the show?
✍ He welcomed people , walked up and down and answering questions.
44- Give examples of the questions that Glumdalclitch ask Gulliver.
✍ What his name was. How high could he jump. To name things in the room.
45- What did the school boy throw on Gulliver?
✍ He threw a nut. the size of a large rock and hit Gulliver's head.
46- What happened to the boy? ✍ He was sent out of the room.
47- How many groups was Gulliver shown to?
✍ He was shown to twelve different groups.
48- Why didn't Gulliver and the farmer return to the market the next day?
✍ Because Gulliver was too tired that he rested for three days.
49- Why couldn't Gulliver completely rest at the farmer's house?
✍ Because his neighbours paid to see Gulliver.
50- Why was the farmer very happy?
✍ Because he got a lot of money and decided to take Gulliver to all cities.
51- What was the destination of the long journey?
✍ It was to the capital city, it was about three thousand km from their city.
52- When did they start the journey to the capital?
✍ On 17th August 1703.
53- How did The girl help to make Gulliver rest ?
✍ She told her father that she was tired and took Gulliver out to get some air.
54- How many rivers did he see on his journey?
✍ He saw five or six rivers that were wider than the Nile.
55- When did they finally reach the capital city? ✍ After ten weeks.
56- What was the capital called? ✍ It was called Lorbrulgrud.
57- What did the farmer hire? ✍ He hired a room in the hotel with a huge table.

58- What happened to Gulliver because of hard work?

✍ He lost a lot of weight and was tired and felt ill.

59- What did the farmer notice?

✍ He saw that Gulliver looked like a skeleton and was afraid that he would die.

60- What did the servant from the palace tell the farmer?

✍ He asked him to go to the place to show Gulliver to the queen?

61- What did Gulliver do when he saw the queen?

✍ He bowed to her and she smiled.

62- What was the queen's offer to Gulliver? Did the farmer agree?

✍ She offered him to live with her family in the palace and the farmer agreed.

63- What was Gulliver's request from the queen?

✍ He asked her to let him keep Glumdalclitch as his teacher.

64- What did the king think when he saw Gulliver?

✍ He thought he was a toy.

65- What did the king say about the farmer?

✍ He said that the farmer had tricked the queen.

Homework

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How did Gulliver benefit from his knife?
2- What did Gulliver do when the farmer's wife saw him holding his knife?
3- Why did the farmer's wife and her daughter put Gulliver's bed in a cupboard?
4- How was Glumdalclitch so kind to Gulliver at home?
5- What did the farmer's neighbours hear about Gulliver?
6- How did the farmer's old friend punish Gulliver for his laugh at him?
7- Why did the farmer decide to take Gulliver to the market?
8- Why was Glumdalclitch worried about Gulliver?
9- Where was Gulliver put during the way to the market?
10- How was Gulliver able to breathe while being in a small box?
11- Glumdalclitch tried to make Gulliver's journey to the market comfortable but it wasn't. How was that?
12- What did the farmer ask a friend to advertise when they reached an inn?
13- How was Glumdalclitch helpful to Gulliver on performing in the inn?
14- Why was the school boy in the inn sent out of the room?
15- Why was Gulliver exhausted and had to rest for three days?
16- Show that the farmer was greedy and heartless. طماع وبلا قلب
17- How far was the capital city away from the farm?
18- Why did Glum. put more dolls in Gulliver's box on his way to the capital city?
19- What did Gulliver see on his journey to the capital city?
20- Why did the farmer agree to sell Gulliver to the Queen?

Chapter 6

Vocabulary

confused	مرتبك	pray	يصلى / يدعو
examine	يفحص	explore	يستكشف
impossible	مستحيل	bruise	كدمة
laugh	يضحك	Knock him to	يلقيه على
best cotton	افضل الاقطان	hail	تمطر تلجا
rough	خشن / هائج	branches	فروع
entertainment	تسلية	luckily	لحسن الحظ
volcano	بركان	accidents	حوادث
mountains	جبال	shake-shook-shaken	يهز / يرج
carpenter	نجار	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
lovely	جميل	Frighten	يخيف
pocket	جيب	grass	حشائش
adviser	مستشار	horrified	مرعوب / خائف
sweet	حلو	grab	يجذب / يشد
eventually	وأخيرا	nail	مسمار
funny	مضحك / مسلى	run away	يهرب
fastened to	مربوط ب	friendship	صداقة
arguments	خلافات / نزاعات	freedom	حرية
rewards	مكافأت	blow strongly	تهب بقوة
a bowl of cream	سلطانية قشطة	pat-patted-patted	يضرب ضربة خفيفة
picked me up	التقطنى لأعلى	gently	برقه
thick	سميك	roof	سطح المنزل
liquid	سائل	squeeze	يضغط / يعصر
rescue	ينقذ	Jacket	سترة / معطف
punishment	عقاب	damage	يضر / يؤذى / تلف
insects	حشرات	escape	يهرب
dining room	حجرة الطعام	frog	ضفدع
stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	climb up	يتسلق
greatly	بشدة	distance	مسافة
a front door	باب امامى	almost	تقريبا
a silver plate	طبق فضى	protect	يحمى
large bone	عظمة ضخمة	realise	يدرك
bees	نحل	park	منتزه / حديقة عامة
harbour	ميناء/ مرفأ	promise	يعد

Text and Quotations

1. It was my first day in the palace and the first time I had met the King of Brobdingnag. He looked angry and confused, as if he did not know what to think of this strange little person who the Queen had bought from a farmer. So he decided he should ask for the advice of the best scholars in the land. Three important-looking men arrived and they examined me carefully. ***"I can't understand how a man can be so small and yet stay alive in our country."*** said one. ***"The man isn't very strong or very fast. His teeth are too small to eat anything without help, unless he eats insects."*** said another. I explained to them and the King that there were many people like me in my country, and that we lived and ate as easily as the people of their land. The scholars laughed. ***"But that's impossible! He must have been taught to say this by the farmer."*** said the oldest and wisest scholar.

لقد كان يومى الاول فى القصر واول مرة أقابل ملك بروبدينجناج، كان يبدو غاضباً ومرتبكاً، كما لو أنه لا يعلم ماذا يجب أن يظن بشأن هذا الشخص الصغير الغريب الذى اشترته الملكة من فلاح، ولذلك قرر أنه يجب عليه أن يستشير أفضل المثقفين فى أرضه، وصل ثلاثة رجال يبدو أنهم مهمين وفحصونى بعناية، قال أحدهم: "أنا لا أستطيع أن افهم كيف لرجل أن يكون صغيراً جداً ومازال حياً فى بلدنا" فقال آخر: "الرجل ليس قوياً جداً ولا سريعاً جداً، وأسنانه صغيرة جداً لدرجة أن لا يأكل أى شيئ دون مساعدة، الا إذا كان يأكل حشرات" شرحت لهم وللملك أن هناك أناس كثيرين مثلى فى بلدى، وأننا نعيش ونأكل بنفس السهولة مثل شعوب أرضهم، فقال أكبر وأحكم المثقفين: "ولكن هذا مستحيل! من المؤكد أنه تعلم أن يقول هذا بواسطة الفلاح".

2. When the King heard this, he asked to see the farmer at once, who, by chance, was still in the city. When the farmer arrived, the King asked him, his daughter and the Queen more questions about me. After a time, he said, ***"It seems my scholars are wrong and what you tell me about your own country is true. The Queen can keep you. I can see that Glumdalclitch likes you greatly, so I don't mind if she stays here as your teacher."*** Glumdalclitch was very pleased and was given her own room in the palace, as well as her own teacher and two servants. The Queen asked the palace carpenter to make me a comfortable home, the size of the box that I had been carried in by the farmer. This he did, and soon I had a lovely house with a front door and large windows. The roof could be lifted so that a comfortable bed could be put inside. I also had two little chairs, two tables and some cupboards to put things in. The walls were soft, so that when anyone carried the house I would not hurt myself.

عندما سمع الملك ذلك، طلب أن يرى الفلاح فى الحال، والذى، كان مازال فى المدينة، عندما وصل الفلاح، سأله الملك هو وابنته والملكة عنى، وبعد فترة، قال الملك: "يبدو أن المثقفين مخطئين وأن ما تخبرنى به عن بلدك صحيح، يمكن للملكة أن تحتفظ بك، كما أننى الاحظ أن جلومدالكليتش تحبك بشدة، لذلك لا أمانع لو تقيم هنا كمعلمة لك" كانت جلومدالكليتش سعيدة جداً وأُعطيت غرفة خاصة بها فى القصر، بالاضافة الى معلمة خاصة وأثنان من الخدم، طلبت الملكة من نجار القصر

أن يصنع لى بيت مريح، فى حجم الصندوق الذى كنت أُحمل فيه بواسطة الفلاح، تم هذا، وسرعان ما كان لدي منزل جميل له باب أمامى ونوافذ كبيرة، يمكن أن يُرفع السقف لكى يُوضع سرير مريح بالداخل، كان لدي أيضاً كرسيان صغيران ومنضدتان و بعض الدواليب لوضع الأشياء فيها، كانت الحوائط ناعمة لكى لا أؤذى نفسى عندما يحمل أى أحد المنزل.

3. A key (the smallest thing ever made in the palace) was made for my door, so I could lock it and stop any rats or insects from entering. Glumdalclitch said she would look after the key, but I asked to keep it in my pocket. The key fitted comfortably in my hand, but to Glumdalclitch it was tiny and I worried she would lose it. They also made me some new clothes which, although they used the best cotton, felt rough and uncomfortable. The Queen was now very friendly to me and asked for me to sit with her when she ate her meals in the dining room. I always sat at a small table by her arm and ate from a silver plate. We usually ate with Glumdalclitch and the Queen's two daughters, who were aged sixteen and thirteen. It was strange for me to see them eat. A meal for one of the daughters was big enough to feed twenty farmers in my country.

تم عمل مفتاح لبابى (وكان أصغر شيئ تم صنعه فى القصر)، لذلك أمكننى أن أقفلها وأمنع أى فئران أو حشرات من الدخول، قالت جلومدالكليتش أنها سوف تعتنى بالمفتاح، ولكنى طلبت أن أحتفظ به فى جيبى، كان المفتاح يثبُت بلا عناء فى يدى، اما بالنسبة لجلومدالكليتش فقد كان صغيراً جداً وكنت قلقاً أنها قد تفقده، صنعوا لى أيضاً بعض الملابس الجديدة والتى كانت خشنة وغير مريحة على الرغم من أنهم أستخدموا أفضل قطن، أصبحت الملكة الآن ودودة جداً تجاهى وطلبت منى أن أجلس معها عندما تتناول وجباتها فى غرفة الطعام، كنت دائماً أجلس على ترابيزة صغيرة بجوار ذراعها وكنت ءأكل فى طبق من الفضة، عادة كنا نتناول الطعام مع جلومدالكليتش وأبنتي الملكة، اللاتى كان عمرهن 16 و 13 عاماً، لقد كان غريباً بالنسبة لى أن أراهما يأكلان، فوجبة لواحدة من البنات كانت كبيرة بما يكفى لإطعام عشرين فلاحاً فى بلدى.

4. Every Wednesday, the King would join us. He enjoyed talking to me and asked me all about what we did for entertainment, how we worked and where we lived. One night, he listened to me talk and then began to laugh. Then he turned to an adviser and said, ***"You know, I cannot believe that people who are so small can have houses and cities, clothes and jobs, rewards and prizes, arguments and fights!"*** When I realised that he was laughing at my own country, I began to feel angry. I also understood, however, that I was too small to do anything about it.

كان الملك ينضم الينا كل يوم أربعاء، كان يستمتع بالحديث معى وكان يسألنى عن كل شيئ نفعله من أجل التسلية، وكيف نعمل وأين نعيش، وذات ليلة، استمع الي وانا أتحدث ثم بدأ يضحك، وبعد ذلك استدار لأحد المستشارين وقال: "هل تعلم، لا أستطيع أن أصدق أن شعوب صغيرة جداً يمكن أن يكون لديها منازل ومدن، ملابس ووظائف، مكافئات وجوائز، نزاعات وحروب" وعندما أدركت أنه كان يسخر من موطنى، بدأت أشعر بالغضب، ولكننى فهمت أيضاً، مع هذا، أننى كنت صغيراً جداً لدرجة أن لا أفعل أى شيئ حيال ذلك.

5. Most people in the palace were kind to me, but there was one servant who did not like me. One day, when no one was looking, he picked me up and dropped

me into a bowl of cream and then ran away as quickly as he could. The cream was cold and very thick and it is lucky that I am a good swimmer or I would have drowned. It was Glumdalclitch who rescued me by pulling me out of the thick liquid just in time. I felt ill after my accident, and was put to bed, and when the Queen heard what had happened, she punished the servant by making him wash all the cream from my clothes. To this day, I have never liked eating cream.

كان معظم الناس فى القصر طيبين معى، ولكن كان هناك خادم واحد لا يحبنى، ذات يوم، وفى حين غفلة من الجميع، ألتقطنى ورمى بى فى سلطانية قشطة ثم هرب بأسرع ما يمكن، كانت القشطة باردة وسميكة جداً ومن حسن الحظ أننى كنت سباحاً ماهراً والا كنت سأغرق، أنها جلومدالكليتش التى أنقذتنى عن طريق سحبى خارج السائل السميك فى الوقت المناسب، شعرت بالمرض بعد هذه الحادثة، وتم وضعى فى السرير، وعندما سمعت الملكة بما حدث عاقبت الخادم بأن جعلته يغسل القشطة من ملابسى، ومنذ ذلك اليوم، لم أرغب ابداً أن آكل القشطة.

6. The punishment did not stop the same servant trying another cruel trick a few days later. We had just finished eating some meat, and on Glumdalclitch's plate there was a large bone with a hole down the middle. When no one was looking, the servant picked me up and pushed my legs into the hole, before standing the bone up on the plate. So when Glumdalclitch came back into the dining room, there I was, high above the plate with both my legs inside the bone, unable to move. Glumdalclitch laughed as she took me out, but I did not find it funny.

لم تمنع العقوبة نفس الخادم من أن يجرب خدعة قاسية أخرى بعد بضعة أيام، كنا قد أنتهينا لتونا من تناول بعض اللحم، وكان فى طبق جلومدالكليتش عظمة كبيرة وبها فتحة أسفل منتصفها، وفى غفلة من الجميع ألتقطنى الخادم ودفع رجلاى فى الفتحة، قبل أن يضع العظمة مستقيمة على الطبق، ولذلك عندما عادت جلومدالكليتش الى غرفة الطعام، كنت أنا هناك فى مكان عالٍ فوق الطبق وكانت كلاً من رجلاى داخل العظمة، لا أقدر على الحركة, ضحكت جلومدالكليتش وهى تخرجنى ولكننى لم أجد ذلك مضحكاً.

7. A bigger problem for me, however, was bees. These enormous insects came into the palace during the summer when the windows were open and we ate fruit or sweet things. The Queen thought I was not very brave because I was frightened of these insects, but although they were nothing to her, they were very dangerous to me. One day, when I was eating some cake in my home, three bees flew in through my window. One of them carried a cake away and the others flew around my head. I pulled out my sword and attacked them, cutting off their stings, and eventually they flew away. I quickly closed the window, although it was hot and there was not much air.

ومع هذا، كانت المشكلة الاكبر بالنسبة لى هى النحل، تلك الحشرات الضخمة كانت تدخل القصر أثناء الصيف عندما تكون النوافذ مفتوحة ونكون جالسين نتناول فاكهة أو أشياء حُلوة، ظنت الملكة أننى لست شجاعاً جداً لأننى كنت أخاف من هذه الحشرات، ولكن بالرغم من أنهم ليسوا شيئاً بالنسبة لها، كانوا خطيرين جداً بالنسبة لى، ذات يوم، عندما كنت أتناول بعض الطعام فى بيتى، دخل ثلاثة من النحل من خلال النافذة، واحدة منهم حملت قطعة من الكيك بعيداً، والأخرين طافا برأسى، أخرجت سيفى وهاجمتهما، فقطعت زنبهما وفى النهاية طاروا

بعيداً، وبسرعة أغلقت النافذة، على الرغم من أن الطقس كان حاراً ولم يكن هناك هواءاً كافياً.

8. One day, the King asked me to sit down so he could talk to me. ***"Let me tell you more about my country."*** he said. ***"In the north there are mountains that are forty kilometres high. You can't pass these mountains because many of them are volcanoes. No one in Brobdingnag knows what lies north of them. The rest of my land has sea all around it, but there isn't one harbour in all the country. The seas are all so rough that it isn't safe for boats to go out into them, so we've never travelled to other countries. Our rivers are full of fish, so we don't need to go fishing in the seas."*** He then told me that there were fifty-one cities in his country and a great many towns and villages. The capital city, Lorbrulgrud, lay on a river and had 80,000 houses. I found all this information very interesting and asked if I could see more of his land.

ذات يوم طلب منى الملك ان اجلس ليتحدث معى، قال لى: "دعنى أخبرك المزيد عن دولتى، فى الشمال يوجد جبال أرتفاعها أربعون كيلومتر، لا يمكنك أن تعبر هذه الجبال لأن الكثير منهم عبارة عن براكين، لا أحد فى بروبدينجناج يعرف ماذا يقع فى شمالها، باقى أرضى به بحر يحيط بكل جوانبها، ولكن لا يوجد ميناء واحد فى كل انحاء الدولة، فالبحار كلها هائجة جداً لدرجة أنه ليس آمناً للمراكب أن تخرج اليها، لذلك لم نسافر أبداً الى أى دول أخرى، أنهارنا مليئة بالسمك لذلك لا نحتاج أن نذهب للصيد فى البحر" ثم أخبرنى أن هناك 51 مدينة فى دولته، وعدد عظيم من المدن الصغيرة والقرى، العاصمة لوربرولجرد تقع على نهر وبها 80,000 منزل، كانت كل هذه المعلومات شيقة بالنسبة لى ولذلك طلبت لو من الممكن ان أرى المزيد من أرضه.

9. On some days, Glumdalclitch took me out with her for rides on her horse through the city and into the parks. She carried me in a special box that the Queen's carpenter had made for me. Inside the box was a table and two chairs, fastened to the floor so that they did not move. People in the city knew who we were and often asked to see me, and Glumdalclitch took me out of the box and put me in her hand while the people pointed and smiled at me.

فى بعض الأيام، كانت جلومدالكليتش تاخذنى معها للخارج لركوب حصانها عبر المدينة وداخل المنتزهات، كانت تحملنى فى صندوق خاص صنعه لى نجار الملكة، داخل الصندوق كان هناك ترابيزة وكرسيين مثبتين فى الأرضية لكى لا يتحركوا، كان الناس فى المدينة يعرفون من نحن وغالباً ما كانوا يطلبون أن يرونى، وكانت جلومدالكليتش تُخرجنى من الصندوق وتضعنى على يدها بينما الناس يشيرون ويبتسمون لى.

---

10. One day, Glumdalclitch carried my box with me inside and went into the palace gardens. She then took me out of the box and put me down on the ground under some apple trees while she went for a walk. Meanwhile, the servant who had put me in the bowl of cream was watching me, although I did not realize this at the time. When he saw that I was under the trees, alone, he shook the branches and about twelve apples fell down. One of them hit me on the back and another hit my face but luckily I was not badly hurt. The servant laughed out loudly before running away again without anyone seeing him but me.

ذات يوم، قامت جلومدالكليتش بحمل الصندوق وأنا بداخله وأنزلتنى على الأرض بجوار بعض شجر التفاح بينما ذهبت هى فى تمشية، وفى نفس اللحظة، كان الخادم، الذى وضعنى من قبل فى سلطانية القشطة، يشاهدنى، بالرغم من أننى لم أدرك ذلك فى حينه، وعندما رأى أننى كنت وحدى تحت الشجر، قام بهز أفرع الشجرة ووقع حوالى أثنا عشرة تفاحة، أحدها أصطدمت بظهرى وأخرى بوجهى ولكن لحسن الحظ لم أُصب بطريقة خطيرة، ضحك الخادم بصوت عالٍ، قبل أن يهرب دون أن يراه أحد غيرى.

11. I had many other accidents in that garden, always when Glumdalclitch had left me alone. Once, a bird almost picked me up before I frightened it away with my sword. Another time, I fell into a huge hole that had been made by some animal and found it very difficult to get out of it. On another day, Glumdalclitch went for a walk through the gardens and left me on the grass. Suddenly, it began to hail. Each hail stone was the size of a tennis ball and it hurt greatly when they hit me. I was quickly knocked to the ground and it was lucky that I found a tree to hide under, or I would have surely died. I had so many bruises that I could not walk for many days.

حدثت لى الكثير من الحوادث فى هذه الحديقة، كانت تحدث دائماً عندما تتركنى جلومدالكليتش وحيداً، ذات مرة، كان طائر على وشك أن يلتقطنى قبل أن أُخيفه بسيفى ليبتعد عنى، وفى مرة أخرى، سقطت فى حفرة كبيرة صنعها حيوان ما ووجدت أنه من الصعب جداً أن أخرج منها، وذات يوم آخر ذهبت جلومدالكليتش للتمشية فى الحديقة وتركتنى على الحشائش، وفجأة، بدأت تمطر ثلج وكان كل حجر ثلجى فى حجم كرة التنس وكانت تؤلم جداً عندما تصطدم بى، وسرعان ما تم طرحي أرضاً وكان من حسن حظى أننى وجدت شجرة لكى أختبأ تحتها وإلا كنت سأموت بالتأكيد، أُصبت بكثير من الكدمات لدرجة أننى لم أستطع أن امشى لعدة أيام.

12. My worst accident, however, happened one morning when Glumdalclitch was in another part of the garden. A dog arrived and, smelling me immediately, quickly took me in its mouth before I could run away. The dog then ran to its master, who worked in the gardens. Luckily, the dog dropped me by its master's feet and he quickly picked me up before the dog could do me any damage. The gardener asked me if I was all right and ran up to Glumdalclitch to tell her what had happened. She was horrified but she did not tell the Queen, thinking she would be angry. From that moment, Glumdalclitch promised that she would never leave me alone again, although this was not something that I was pleased to hear. I was, of course, pleased to have her friendship and to have her help and protect me, but I also needed my own space and freedom.

ومع كل هذا، فإن أسوأ حادثة لى وقعت ذات صباح عندما كانت جلومدالكليتش فى جزء آخر من الحديقة، وصل كلب وبدأ فى الحال يشمنى وسرعان ما أخذنى فى فمه قبل أن أستطيع الهروب، ثم جرى الكلب الى سيده، والذى كان يعمل فى الحدائق، ولحسن الحظ، أسقطنى الكلب بجوار قدمى سيده والذى ألتقطنى بسرعة قبل أن يُلحق بي الكلب أى ضرر، سألنى الجناينى إذا كنت بخير وجرى الى جلومدالكليتش ليخبرها بما حدث، كانت مرعوبة لكنها لم تخبر الملكة، لأنها ظنت أنها ستغضب. منذ هذه اللحظة، وعدتنى جلومدالكليتش أنها أبداً لن تترمنى وحدى مرة أُخرى، بالرغم من أن هذا لم يكن بالشيئ الذى أسعد بسماعه، كنت بالطبع مسروراً بصداقتها

ومساعدتها وحمايتها لى، ولكنى أيضاً كنت أحتاج مساحتى الخاصة من الفراغ والحرية.

13. One day, I was with the Queen in the palace and was telling her about my travels on the seas. ***“You must be a good sailor.”*** she said. ***“Perhaps you’d like to have your own boat? Then you could show us what you can do.” “I would love that*.”** *I told her.* ***“However, I can’t use any of the boats in your land because of their size. I’d need a special one that was much smaller.” “Very well.”*** she replied. ***“I’ll ask the palace carpenter to make you one.”***

ذات يوم كنت مع الملكة فى القصر وكنت أخبرها عن رحلاتى فى البحار، فقالت: "من المؤكد أنك بحار ماهر، لعلك تحتاج قارباً خاصاً بك؟ وعندها تستطيع أن ترينا ماذا يمكن أن تفعل" فأخبرتها: "أود ذلك، ولكنى لا أستطيع أن أستخدم أى من القوارب الموجودة فى أرضك بسبب حجمها، سأحتاج الى مركب خاص والذى سيكون أصغر بكثير" ردت قائلة: "جيد جداً، سأطلب من نجار القصر أن يصنع لك واحداً".

14. A few days later, I was given a small sailing boat, beautifully made from hard wood. At first, the Queen suggested that I sailed the boat in a bath, but there was not much room, even for so tiny a ship, so she asked her servants to make me a small lake in her gardens. The Queen and her ladies liked to watch me sailing up and down this small lake and they sometimes waved their hands around to make a breeze which allowed me to sail more quickly. I enjoyed these sailing trips, although danger was never far away. One day, a frog jumped into the lake and made a wave that was so big that it nearly turned over my boat. The Queen grabbed me to stop this happening, and each day, after I had finished sailing, she picked up the boat and put it on a nail on the wall in the garden, where it could dry in the sun.

بعض بضعة أيام، تم أعطائى مركب صيد صغير، مصنوع بطريقة جميلة من الخشب الصلب، فى البداية، أقترحت الملكة أن أُبحر بالمركب فى حمام سباحة، ولكن لم يوجد فراغ كافٍ، حتى لمثل هذا المركب الصغير جداً، لذلك طلبت من خدمها أن يصنعوا لى بحيرة صغيرة فى حديقتها، كانت الملكة وبناتها يحببن أن يرونى أُبحر ذهاباً وإياباً فى هذه البحيرة الصغيرة وكانوا أحياناً يلوحون بأيديهم بصورة دائرية لكى يصنعوا دوائر هوائية تسمح لى أن أُبحر بسرعة أكبر، لقد أستمتعت بهذه الرحلات البحرية بالرغم من أن الخطر لم يكن بعيداً جداً، ذات يوم، قفزت ضفدع فى البحيرة وصنع موجة كانت كبيرة جدا لدرجة أنها تقريباً حولت مركبى رأساً على عقب، ولكن الملكة أمسكت بى بشدة لكى لا تدع هذا يحدث، وكل يوم بعد أن أنتهى من الابحار، كانت تلتقط المركب وتضعه فى مسمار فى حائط فى الحديقة حيث يمكنه أن يجف فى الشمس.

15. The biggest danger for me at that time, however, was from a monkey who belonged to one of the servants. I was sitting inside my house with the windows open one morning when I heard a noise. I looked out of the windows and saw the monkey exploring the room where my house had been put. When he saw my house, he looked pleased and ran up to take a closer look. He then saw me through the windows and tried to reach me with his long arms. I tried to hide, but eventually the monkey got hold of my jacket and pulled me towards him. He held

me in his arms, as a mother does with a baby, and when I tried to escape, he squeezed me so hard that I thought it was best not to move. At that moment Glumdalclitch opened the door into the room, so the monkey quickly jumped out of the window and climbed up onto the roof of the palace, still holding me with one hand! ***"Quick! The monkey's got hold of Grildrig! He's going onto the roof!"*** I heard Glumdalclitch shout behind me.

ومع هذا، فالخطر الأكبر بالنسبة لى فى هذه الفترة، كان من قرد يخص أحد الخدم، كنت جالساً فى بيتى والنوافذ مفتوحة ذات صباح عندما سمعت ضوضاء، نظرت من النوافذ ووجدت القرد يتفحص الغرفة التى تم وضع بيتى فيها، وعندما رأى بيتى بدا مسروراً وأسرع ناحيته لأخذ نظرة عن قرب، ثم رآنى من خلال النوافذ وحاول أن يصل إلي بيديه الطويلتين، حاولت أن أختبأ ولكن فى النهاية أمسك القرد بمعطفى وجذبنى ناحيته، حملنى بين يديه، كما تفعل الأم مع أبنها، وعندما حاولت الهرب ضغط علي بشدة لدرجة أننى ظننت أنه كان من الافضل ان لا أتحرك، وفى هذه اللحظة فتحت جلومدالكليتش باب الغرفة لذلك قفز القرد من النافذة وصعد فوق سطح القصر، وكان مايزال يمسك بى بإحدى يديه، وسمعت جلومدالكليتش تصيح خلفى: "بسرعة! لقد أمسك القرد بجريلدريج! إنه مُتجه الى السطح".

16. Soon servants were running outside with long wooden ladders. However, by this time the monkey was sitting at the highest point of the roof, holding me like a baby and trying to feed me some nuts that it had found. When I did not eat them, the monkey patted me gently. Some of the servants could see what the monkey was doing to me and I could hear them laughing far below. Shortly after, I heard some of the servants climbing up the ladders, but it was clear that the ladders would only reach the bottom of the roof, some distance from where the monkey sat. Hearing the servants getting nearer, however, the monkey got worried and decided to put me down before quickly running away.

سرعان ما خرج الخدم ومعهم سلالم خشبية طويلة، ومع هذا، بحلول هذا الوقت كان القرد يجلس فى أعلى نقطة من السطح، ممسكاً بى كالطفل الرضيع، وكان يحاول أن يطعمنى بعض جوز الهند الذى وجده، وعندما لم آكله، ضربنى بلطف، كلن بعض الخدم يرون ما يفعله القرد بى وكنت أسمعهم يضحكون تحتى بمسافة، وبعد ذلك بفترة قصيرة، سمعت بعض الخدم يصعدون السلالم، ولكن كان من الواضح أن السلالم ستصل فقط الى أسفل السطح، على مسافة ما من المكان الذى يجلس فيه القرد، ومع هذا، عندما سمع القرد الخدم يقتربون، اصبح القرد قلقاً وقرر أن يضعنى أرضاً قبل أن يهرب مسرعاً.

17. I was now sitting alone at the very top of a roof which was, for me, as high as a mountain. It was a very long way down to the bottom of the roof where the servants were, and even further to the ground. I felt the wind now blowing strongly on my face. I prayed that the servants could get me down before the wind blew me off the roof.

كنت الآن جالساً وحدى على اعلى قمة السطح، بالنسبة لى كان فى نفس أرتفاع جبل، لقد كان طريقاص طويلاص جداً الى أسفل السطح حيث كان الخدم، وكان أبعد من ذلك الى الأرض، شعرت أن الرياح كانت تهب بقوة على وجهى، دعوت الله أن يتمكن الخدم من إنزالى قبل أن تدفعنى الرياح من فوق السطح.

Questions with Model Answers

1- What is Brobdingnag? ➧ It is a country where people are giants.

2- Why did the king of Brobdingnag look angry and confused?

➧ Because he didn't know what to think of the strange tiny person, Gulliver.

3- Why did the king ask for the advice of the best scholars?

➧ Because he was confused about Gulliver.

4- Who came to examine Gulliver?

➧ Three important-looking men came and examined him carefully.

5- What did one of the scholars expect Gulliver to eat?

➧ He expected that Gulliver ate insects.

6- Why did the king want to see the farmer?

➧ To ask him some questions about Gulliver.

7- What did the king do after discussing the farmer ?

➧ He said that his scholars were wrong and that the queen can keep Gulliver.

8- What did the king say concerning Glumdalclitch ?

➧ He said that she liked Gulliver so he didn't mind if she stayed to be his teacher.

9- What was Glumdalclitch given in the palace?

➧ She was Given a room, a teacher and two servants.

10- What did the queen ask the palace carpenter to do?

➧ She asked him to make Gulliver a comfortable home.

11- How big was Gulliver's home? ➧ It was the size of a box.

12- describe Gulliver's home? ➧ 1- It was lovely with a door and large windows.

2- The roof could be lifted to put a bed inside .

3- It had two chairs, two tables and some cupboards. 4- The walls were soft.

13- Why were the walls of the house soft?

➧ So that Gulliver wouldn't be hurt when anyone carried the house.

14- Why did the carpenter make a key to the house?

➧ So that Gulliver could lock the door and stop any rats or insects to go in.

15- Where could Gulliver keep the key? ➧ He wanted to keep it in his pocket.

16- Why didn't Gulliver want the key to be with Glumdalclitch ?

➧ Because it was so tiny for her that she might lose it.

17- What did they make Gulliver in the palace to wear?

➧ They made him some new clothes of the best cotton.

18- How was the queen friendly to Gulliver?

➧ She asked him to sit with her at eating. He ate in a silver plate.

19- How old were the queen's two daughters? ➧ Sixteen and thirteen.

20- Why was it strange for Gulliver to see the daughters eating?

➧ As a meal for one of them was big to feed 20 farmers in his country.

21- When did the king join his family and Gulliver? What did he enjoy?

➧ He joined them every Wednesday. He enjoyed talking to Gulliver.

22- Why did the king laugh and talk to one of his advisers?

➧ Because he couldn't believe that small people could have houses, cities, clothes and jobs, rewards and prizes, arguments and fights.

23- How did most people in the palace feel towards Gulliver?

➧ Most of them were kind to him except one servant who didn't like him.

24- How did the servant who didn't like Gulliver deal with him?

➧ He picked Gulliver up and dropped him into a bowl of cream and ran away.

25- Who saved Gulliver from drowning in the cream bowl? ➧ Glumdalclitch.

26- Why didn't Gulliver drown in the bowl of cream?

➧ Because he was a good swimmer.

27- What happened to Gulliver after the accident?

➧ He felt ill and stayed in bed.

28- What did the queen do with the servant?

➧ She punished him by making him wash all the cream from Gulliver's clothes.

29- When did Gulliver begin to hate cream?

➧ After the servant had put him in the bowl of the ice cream.

30- Did the servant stop dealing with Gulliver badly? How do you know?

➧ No, he tried another trick when he put Gulliver's leg into a hole of a bone.

31- What was Gulliver's biggest problem?

➧ The biggest problem was the bees, as they were very dangerous to him.

32- What did the three bees do one day?

➧ One of them carried away Gulliver's cake and two flew around his head.

33- How did Gulliver defend himself against the bees?

➧ He pulled his sword, attacked them and cut their stings.

34- What did the king say to Gulliver about his country?

➧ There were mountains in the north which were forty kilometers high.

35- Why couldn't anyone pass the the northern mountains?

➧ Because many of them were volcanoes.

36- Did anyone know what lied behind the the northern mountains?

➧ No one in Brobdingnag knew what lied behind them.

37- What else did the king say to Gulliver about his country?

➧ He said that the rest of the country had sea all around it.

38- Why wasn't it safe for boats to go into the seas?

➧ Because they were all so rough.

39- Why hadn't they ever travelled to other countries?

➧ As the seas were all so rough.

40- Why didn't they have to go fishing in the seas?

➧ Because their rivers were full of fish.

41- How many cities are there in this country?

➧ There were fifty-one cities and great towns and villages.

42- What was the capital City?

➧ It was called Lorbrulgrud and it lay on a river and had 80.000 houses.

43- Where did Glumdalclitch carry Gulliver during their ride?

➧ She carried him on a special box made by the queen's carpenter.

44- What were inside Gulliver's box? ➧ There were a table and two chairs.

45- What did the servant do when he saw Gulliver under the apple tree?

➧ He shook the branches so twelve apples fell down.

46- What hit Gulliver on the back and face? What was the result?

➧ An apple hit him on the back and another hit his face. But he wasn't badly hurt.

47- What did the servant do when he saw that the apples hit Gulliver?

➧ He laughed loudly and ran away without being seen.

48- What other accidents did Gulliver have in the palace garden?

➧ 1- Once a bird picked him up , but he frightened it with his sword.
2- Another time he fell into a huge hole made by animals.
3- Once it began to hail and this hurt him greatly, he had some bruises.

49- What was the effect of the bruises on Gulliver?

➧ He couldn't walk for many days.

50- What was Gulliver's worst accident?

➧ It was when a dog came, smelled him and took him in its mouth.

51- How was Gulliver lucky when the dog took him in its mouth?

➧ The dog dropped him by its master's feet (the gardener) and the man picked Gulliver before the dog could do any damage to him.

52- Why didn't Glumdalclitch tell the queen about the accident of the dog?

➧ Because she thought the queen might be angry.

53- What was Glumdalclitch's decision after all these accidents?

➧ She decided not to leave Gulliver alone.

54- What was Gulliver's reaction when Glumdalclitch decided not to leave him alone?

➧ He was pleased to be with her, but he needed his own space and freedom.

55- What did Gulliver tell the queen one day?

➧ He told her about his travels on the seas.

56- How could Gulliver get a boat?

➧ The queen asked the carpenter to make him one.

57- What did the queen suggest for Gulliver's sail? Why didn’t it succeed?

➧ She suggested sailing the boat in a bath, but there wasn't much room.

58- What did the queen ask her servants to do after that?

➧ She asked them to make a small lake in the garden.

59- What did the queen and her servants do to make more breeze? Why?

➧ They waved their hands around, to make Gulliver sail more quickly.

60- What danger did Gulliver face in the lake?

➧ A frog jumped in the lake and made a big wave that turned over the boat.

61- What was Gulliver's biggest danger?

➧ It was when a monkey held him in its arms, climbed up onto the roof of the palace and left him at the top of the roof.

62- How was the monkey kind to Gulliver?

➧ It held him in its arms like a mother and tried to feed him on some nuts.

63- What was the reaction of the servants when they saw what the monkey did with Gulliver? ➧ They laughed at what they had seen.

64- What did the servants do to save Gulliver?

➧ They tried to climb up with ladders but they didn't reach the top. When the monkey Gulliver left, one of the servants could reach him and save him.

65- Why was it difficult for Gulliver to climb down the roof?

➧ As it was very long to reach the bottom .

66- Why did Gulliver pray while hw was on the roof? ➧ He prayed that the servants could get him down before the wind blew him off the roof.

Homework

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did the King ask for the advice of the best scholars about Gulliver?
2- How were the scholars puzzled on seeing Gulliver?
3- Why did one of the scholars think that Gulliver can't eat without help?
4- What part of Gulliver'S speech made the scholars laugh?
5- Why did the King ask to see the farmer at once?
6- When did the King realize that his scholars were wrong and Gulliver was right?
7- Show that the Queen was so kind to wards Gulliver.
8- Why was there a key for Gulliver'S house door?
9- To what extent was the King keen on sitting with Gulliver?
10- What subjects did the King ask Gulliver about?
11- Who rescued Gulliver from drowning in the bowel of cream?
12- Why did the Queen believe that Gulliver was not brave?
13- How did Gulliver succeed in cutting off the bees stings?
14- What would have happened if Gulliver hadn't hidden under a tree when it hailed?
15- How did Gulliver escape death after the dog picked him up in its mouth?
16- Why did Glumdalclitch promise Gulliver not to leave him alone?
17- Why did the Queen order making a lake in the garden?
18- How did the Queen and her daughters enjoy their time with Gulliver?
19- How did the monkey stop Gulliver escaping from him?
20- What did the servants use the ladders for?

Chapter 7

Vocabulary

top	قمة	reach the top	يصل للقمة
roof	سقف	shelves	أرفف
disappeared	اختفي	against	ضد / مقابل
blow off	يهب / يوقع	both hands	كلتا اليدين
nervously	بعصبية	language	لغة
rescue	ينقذ	ideas	أفكار
ladder	سلم	beliefs	معتقدات
pocket	جيب	rebellions	ثورات
adventure	مغامرة	concert	حفلة موسيقية
send away	يطرد	placed on	يوضع على
government	الحكومة	sound like	يبدو
weather	الطقس	thunder	الرعد
arts	الأداب / الفنون	too loud	عالي جدا
education	التعليم	far room	حجرة بعيدة
legal system	النظام التشريعي / الحكم	soldiers	جنود
take notes	يدون ملاحظات	step	خطوة
seem	يبدو	kind offer	عرض طيب
very weak	ضعيف جدا	share	يشارك
extremely	للغاية	south of	جنوب
weapons	أسلحة	servant boy	خادم
destroy	يدمر	waves	أمواج
horrified	مرعوب	birds' eggs	بيض الطيور
science	علوم	lift up	يرفع
terrible	سيء / فظيع	forward	للأمام
proud of	فخور بـ	speed	سرعة
suddenly	فجأة	no good	لافائدة من
feel sorry	يشعر بالحزن	flapping	رفرفة الجناح
badly run	يدار بشكل سيء	wings	أجنحة
grow food	يزرع طعام	sea bird	طائر بحري
make war	يشن حرب	feet	أقدام
soft	ناعم	seashells	قواقع بحرية
edge	حافة / جانب	jolt	سقوط / هزة شديدة

Text and Quotations

1. The very top of the palace roof was very high and I was in danger of being blown off by the wind. The monkey that had carried me there had now disappeared and I waited nervously while the Queen's servants tried to rescue me. After some time, a brave servant reached up from his ladder, put me in his pocket and carried me back down to the ground. After this adventure, I was so ill that I had to stay in bed for two weeks. The King and Queen often visited me to see how I was, and I was told that the monkey had been sent away from the palace. I did not need to worry about it ever again.

كانت ذروة سطح القصر مرتفعة جداً وكنت فى خطر أن تدفعنى الرياح من فوقها، لقد أختفى القرد الذى حملنى الى هناك وانا الآن انتظر بعصبية بينما خدم الملكة يحاولون أن ينقذونى، وبعد بعض الوقت، وصل خادم شجاع الى الأعلى بواسطة السلم الخاص به ووضعنى فى جيبه وحملنى عائداً الى الأرض. بعد هذه المغامرة كنت مريضاً جداً لدرجة أننى أضطررت أن أمكث فى السرير لمدة أسبوعين، كان الملك والملكة يزورانى غالباً لكى يروا كيف كان حالى، وأُخبرت أن القرد تم أرساله بعيداً من القصر، وأنه ليس هناك حاجة أن أقلق بشأنه أى مرة أخرى.

2. When I was better, I visited the King one day in his office. ***"It's good to see you're feeling better, Gulliver."*** he said. ***"Tell me, what would you have done if a monkey had taken you in your own country?"*** ***"We don't have any monkeys in my country."*** I told him, ***"but if we did, I wouldn't be frightened of them at all. They're so small that they wouldn't be a problem for me."*** ***"What, they're smaller than you?"*** laughed the King, who thought that this was very funny. ***"I'd love to hear more about your country. Please, tell me more."*** So I told him all about England: its government and its weather, about the arts and our education, and about our own kings and queens. I explained England's legal system and told him all about the events in the country's history. The King was very interested in everything I told him, and took notes while I talked.

عندما تحسنت زرت الملك ذات يوم فى مكتبه، قال لى: "من الجيد أن أراك تشعر بتحسن يا جليفر، اخبرنى ماذا كنت ستفعل لو أن قرداً أخذك وأنت فى بلدك" فاخبرته: "نحن ليس لدينا أية قرود فى بلدى، حتى لو حدث هذا لن أكون مرعوباً منهم على الاطلاق، فهم صغار جداً لدرجة أنهم لن يكونوا مشكلة بالنسبة لى" فضحك الملك وهويظن أن ذلك مضحكاً: "ماذا، هم أصغر منك؟ أود أن أسمع المزيد عن بلدك، من فضلك أخبرنى أكثر" لذلك أخبرته كل شيئ عن انجلترا: حكومتها وطقسها، عن الفنون و التعليم، وعن ملوكنا وملكاتنا، لقد شرحت النظام القانونى فى انجلترا واخبرته كل شيئ عن الاحداث التى تمثل تاريخ بلدى، كان الملك مهتماً بكل شيئ أخبرته به، وكان يدون ملاحظاته بينما كنت أتحدث.

3. After each of these talks, the King later used his notes to ask me questions. He seemed to think that my country's legal system was very weak and the government was extremely strange, and slowly I began to see England through his eyes. ***"Where does your country get its money from, and why do you***

have so many wars?" he asked me. I told him about our weapons that could easily kill people and destroy buildings. ***"Would you like me to show you how to make such weapons yourself?"*** I asked him. The King looked horrified. ***"I've always been very interested in science."*** he said, ***"but I cannot believe that anyone would want to have such terrible things. Please, I never want to hear about such weapons again."***

بعد كل واحدة من هذه الاحاديث كان الملك فيما بعد يستخدم ملاحظاته لكى يسألنى بعض الأسئلة، يبدو انه كان يعتقد أن النظام القانونى فى بلدى كان ضعيفاً جداً وأن الحكومة كانت غريبة للغاية وبدأت تدريجياً أرى انجلترا من خلال عينيه، سألنى: "من أين تأتى بلدك بالمال، ولماذا لديكم حروباً عديدة؟" أخبرته عن أسلحتنا التى تستطيع بسهولة أن تقتل الناس وتدمر المبانى، ثم سألته: "هل تود أن أُريك كيف تصنع تلك الأسلحة بنفسك؟" فقال: "لقد كنت دائماً مهتماً جداً بالعلوم" ثم بدا مذعوراً: "ولكننى لا أستطيع ان أصدق أن أى أحد يود أن يمتلك مثل هذه الأشياء الفظيعة، من فضلك، لا أريد أبداً أن أسمع عن مثل هذه الأسلحة مرة أخرى"

4. My country, which I was so proud of, suddenly seemed small, unimportant and badly run. ***"I feel sorry for your people."*** he continued. ***"You're very lucky because you've escaped to a better place, where people want to grow food rather than make war."*** In my many talks with the King, I discovered that the country of Brobdingnag was very different to our own. They did not need weapons but also they did not have many books, and the King's library, the largest in the land, had only a thousand books in it. The King said that I could borrow anything that I wanted to read and asked his carpenter to make me a ladder so I could reach the top shelves.

بلدى التى كنت فخوراً جداً بها بدت فجأة صغيرة وغير مهمة وتُدار بطريقة سيئة، أكمل الملك قائلاً: "أشعر بالحزن تجاه شعبك، أنت محظوظ جداً أنك هربت الى مكان أفضل، حيث الناس يريدون أن يزرعوا الطعام بدلاً من صنع الحروب" وفى أحاديث كثيرة مع الملك أكتشفت أن دولة بروبدينجناج كانت مختلفة جداً عن بلدى، هم لا يحتاجون أسلحة ولكنهم أيضاً لا يمتلكون الكثير من الكتب، ومكتبة الملك التى تعد الأكبر فى أرضهم بها فقط ألف كتاب، قال الملك أننى يمكننى أن أستعير أى شيئ أريد أن أقرأه وطلب من النجار الخاص به أن يصنع لى سُلماً لكى أصل الى الأرفف العليا.

5. When I found a book that I was interested in, I would push it open against a wall. I would then use the ladder to climb to the top of the page so I could read the first line, then slowly walk down the ladder until I had read all the page. Then I would use both hands to turn the page and do the same thing again. Because their language does not have many words, I could read the books easily and soon I had read most of the books in the library. I learned a lot about the country's ideas and beliefs and understood that, although they never had wars with other countries, they did sometimes have rebellions between different areas inside the country.

عندما كنت أجد كتاباً أنا مهتم به، كنت أدفعه لأفتحه على حائط، ثم أستخدم السُلم لكى أتسلق الى أعلى الصفحة لكى أقرأ السطر الأول، ثم أنزل ببطئ أسفل السلم حت أقرأ كل الصفحة، ثم كنت

أستخدم كلا يديى لكى أقلب الصفحة وكنت أفعل نفس الشيئ مرات أخرى، ولأن لغتهم ليس بها الكثير من الكلمات تمكنت من قراءة الكتب بسهولة وسرعان ما قرأت معظم الكتب التى فى المكتبة، تعلمت الكثير عن أفكار الدولة ومعتقداتها وفهمت أنه بالرغم من أنهم لم يحاربوا دول أخرى من قبل، كان لديهم أحياناً تمرد بين المناطق المختلفة داخل الدولة.

6. The books also told me about the music in Brobdingnag, and when I asked the King about it, he asked me if I would like to hear a concert. So, one day, my box was carried into a huge room and placed on a table where I could hear the King's best musicians. However, when the concert started, the noise was so great that the music only sounded like thunder. I told the King my problem, so it was decided that my box should be moved to the room next door, but even here, the music was too loud for me. It was only when the box was put in a far room in the corner of the palace, with the doors and windows closed, that I could begin to hear music and not just a loud noise. In fact, the music was then quite nice.

لقد أخبرتنى الكتب أيضاً عن الموسيقى فى بروبدينجناج، وعندما سألت الملك عنها سألنى لو أحب أن أسمع حفلة موسيقية، ولذلك، ذات يوم، تم حمل الصندوق الخاص بى الى غرفة كبيرة وتم وضعه على ترابيزة حيث يمكننى سماع أفضل موسيقيين لدى الملك، ومع هذا، عندما بدأت الحفلة، كانت الضوضاء عالية جداً لدرجة أن الموسيقى كانت فقط تبدو مثل الرعد، أخبرت الملك بمشكلتى ولذلك قرر أن يتم نقل صندوقى الى الغرفة المجاورة، ولكن حتى هنا، كانت الموسيقى صخبة جداً بالنسبة لى، إنه فقط عندما تم وضع الصندوق فى غرفة بعيدة فى زاوية القصر وتم غلق الابواب والنوافذ، أن تمكنت من أن أبدأ فى سماع الموسيقى وليس مجرد ضوضاء عالية، فى الحقيقة، كانت الموسيقى منذ ذلك الحين جميلة الى حد كبير.

---

7. I had now been in Brobdingnag for two years and I began to think more and more about my own country. I wanted to see my family again, but how could I get home? The ship that I arrived on was the first to arrive on the coast from another land, but perhaps another one would arrive one day. When the King found out about what I thinking, he said he would like to help me. ***"If my soldiers find another ship like yours, I'll ask them to bring it at once to the capital. I'd like to find you some friends of your own size. They can live in the palace with you."*** he said. It was a kind offer. However, I did not like the idea of more people being kept to please the King and Queen. I decided I wanted to speak to people who shared my ideas and who I could talk to without worrying about a giant stepping on me, or a bird taking me away. For that to happen, I needed to leave Brobdingnag.

لقد مكثت فى بروبدينجناج لمدة سنتين وبدأت أفكر اكثر وأكثر فى موطنى، أريد أن أرى عائلتى مرة أخرى، ولكن كيف يمكننى أن أصل لوطنى؟ السفينة التى وصلت عليها كانت أول سفينة تصل للساحل من أرض أخرى، ولكن ربما تصل سفينة أخرى ذات يوم، عندما أكتشف الملك فيما كنت أفكر قال أنه يود أن يساعدنى، قال لى: "إذا وجد جنودى سفينة أخرى مثل سفينتك، سأطلب منهم أن يحضروها فى الحال الى العاصمة، أود أن أجد بعض الأصدقاء فى نفس

حجمك، يمكنهم أن يعيشوا فى القصر معك." كان عرضاً عطوفاً، ولكنى لم أحب فكرة الاحتفاظ بمزيد من الناس لكى يُسعدوا الملك والملكة، قررت أننى أريد أن أتحدث مع أُناس يشاركونى أفكارى، أناس أستطيع أن أتحدث اليهم دون قلق من أن عملاق سوف يدهسنى، أو طائر سوف يأخذنى بعيداً، ولكى يحدث هذا فأنا فى حاجة الى أن أغادر بروبدينجناج.

8. One day, Glumdalclitch and I were travelling with the King and Queen in the south of Brobdingnag. As usual, I was carried in my wooden box until we arrived at one of the King's palaces which was about thirty kilometres from the coast. Glumdalclitch and I were very tired, and Glumdalclitch felt a little ill, so she said she was going to bed. I knew we were near to the sea, so before she left the room, I asked her if I could go to the beach to get some fresh air. She agreed and asked a young servant boy to take me there in the wooden box. When we arrived at the beach, I was very pleased to see the sea again after such a long time. I looked out of the windows of my box and enjoyed watching the waves and thought about England, which was somewhere to the west. After a few minutes, the sea air made me feel tired, so I lay down in my box and went to sleep. The young servant closed my windows to keep out the cold wind and, thinking there would be no danger to me, went off to look for birds' eggs on the beach.

ذات يوم، كنت أنا وجلومدالكليتش مسافرون مع الملك والملكة فى جنوب بروبدينجناج، وكالمعتاد، تم حملى فى صندوقى الخشبى حتى وصلنا الى أحد قصور الملك والذى كان يبعد حوالى ثلاثون كيلومتراً من الساحل، كنت انا وجلومدالكليتش متعبين جداً، وشعرت جلومدالكليتش بمرض خفيف، لذلك قالت أنها ذاهبة الى النوم، كنت أعلم اننا قريبين من البحر، ولذلك قبل أن تغادر الغرفة، طلبت منها اذا كان من الممكن أن أذهب الى الشاطئ لأحضر بعض المياه العذبة، وافقت وطلبت من خادم صغير أن يأخذنى الى هناك فى الصندوق الخشبى. عندما وصلت الى الشاطئ، كنت مسروراً جداً أن أرى البحر مرة أخرى بعد هذه الفترة الطويلة جداً، نظرت من نوافذ الصندوق واستمتعت بمشاهدة الأمواج وفكرت فى انجلترا، والتى كانت فى مكان ما ناحية الغرب، وبعد بضع دقائق جعلنى هواء البحر أشعر بالتعب، ولذلك رقدت فى صندوقى وذهبت فى النوم، أغلق الخادم الشاب النوافذ لكى يُبعد الرياح الباردة، ولأنه ظن أنه لا يوجد خطر علي، ذهب مسرعاً ليبحث عن بيض الطيور على الشاطئ.

9. I do not know how long I slept for, but I found myself suddenly woken up by a noise. I felt something lift up my box very suddenly, and I was carried forward at great speed. I realised that the box was being carried high into the air. ***"Hello? Who's picking me up? Please, put me down!"*** I called, as loudly as I could but it was no good, the box continued to rise. I looked from my bed to the window, but all I could see were clouds. I could now hear a noise above me which sounded like the flapping of wings, and as I stood up, I finally realised what had happened. A huge sea bird had picked up my box and carried it off in its feet.

لم أعلم كم من الوقت نمت، ولكنى وجدت نفسى أستيقظ فجأة بواسطة ضوضاء، شعرت بشيئ ما يرفع صندوقى فجأة، وتم حملى والتحرك بى بسرعة كبيرة، أدركت ان الصندوق كان محمولاً عالياً فى الهواء: صحت بأعلى صوت ممكن: "مرحباً؟ من الذى يصطحبنى لأعلى؟ من فضلك، ضعنى أرضاً" ولكن لا فائدة، أستمر الصندوق فى الارتفاع، ونظرت من سريرى تجاه

النافذة، ولكن كل ما أستطعت أن أراه كان سُحباً، والآن أستطعت أن أسمع ضجة فقى والتى كانت تبدو مثل رفرفة أجنحة، وعندما وقفت، أدركت أخيراً ما قد حدث، لقد ألتقط صندوقى طائر بحرى ضخم وحمله بسرعة فى قدميه.

10. I know that in many countries there are birds which pick up and carry seashells high into the sky. They then drop them onto a hard rock to break, open the shells so they can get to the soft food inside. Surely this was what this huge bird was planning to do with my box. I was extremely worried. After a few minutes I heard the flapping of wings get faster, and my box moved up and down very quickly. Then the wings went quiet and I felt myself falling very quickly towards the ground. It was a horrible feeling. How high was I? It seemed as if I was falling for a long time, although it was probably only seconds. Then I felt a terrible jolt, and for a few seconds I could not breathe. What had happened? I had stopped falling and the box had not broken, but it continued to move slowly up and down. I now understood that the box had landed in the sea. I silently thanked the carpenter for making the box so well, using strong wood and metal for the edges. No water came in through the edges of the doors, and the box floated quite well. The bird, perhaps seeing that its food was still protected, flew away into the clear sky.

اعلم أنه فى دول عديدة هناك طيور تلتقط الصدف (المحارات) وتحملها عالياً فى السماء، ثم يرمونها على صخرة صماء لكى تنكسر وتُفتح المحارة لكى يصلوا الى الطعام اللين بداخلها، بالتأكيد هذا ما سيفعله هذا الطائر الضخم بصندوقى، كنت قلقاً للغايةن وبعد بضع دقائق، سمعت رفرفة الأجنحة تزداد سرعةن وكان صندوقى يتحرك لأعلى ولأسفل بسرعة كبيرة، وبعد ذلك هدءت الأجنحة وشعرت أننى أسقط بسرعة كبيرة نحو الأرض، لقد كان شعوراً فظيعاً، مك الارتفاع الذى كنت فيه؟ يبدو ما لو اننى كنت أسقط لفترة طويلة، على الرغم من أنها كانت ربما مجرد ثوانٍ، ثم شعرت بهزة مفاجئة ولثوانى عديدة لم أتمكن من التنفس، ماذا حدث؟ توقفت عن السقوط و الصندوق لم ينكسر، ولكنه أستمر فى التحرك ببطئ من أعلى لأسفل، فهمت الآن أن الصندوق قد وقع فى البحر وفى صمت شكرت النجار لأنه صنع صندوقاً جيداً جداً، مستخدماً أشجار قوية وحديد من أجل الجوانب، لم تدخل أى مياه من خلال جوانب الابواب، وطفى الصندوق بطريقة جيدة جداً، أما الطائر فلعله رأى أن طعامه كان ما يزال محمياً مما جعله يطير بعيداً فى السماء الصافية.

11. I knew, however, that I was far from Glumdalclitch, who would surely have rescued me. I worried, too, about the rocks that the King had told me were all around the coast of Brobdingnag. If the box hit a rock, or if one window broke to let in the water, I would surely drown. I had not died in the fall, but I was still in great danger.

ومع هذا، كنت مدركاً أننى كنت بعيداً عن جلومدالكليتش والتى كانت بالتأكيد ستنقذنى، كنت قلقاً أيضاً بشأن الصخور التى أخبرنى عنها الملك أنها تحيط بكل سواحل بروبدينجناج، لو ان اصندوق أصطدم بصخرة، أو أن أحد النوافذ أنكسر وترك الماء يدخل، سوف أغرق بالتأكيد، لم أمُت فى السقوط ولكنى كنت ما أزال فى خطر كبير.

Questions with Model Answers

1- Who tried to rescue Gulliver after the monkey had left him?

@ The servants of the queen.

2- Who saved Gulliver? How? @ A brave servant used a ladder, put Gulliver in his pocket and carried him back down to the ground.

3- How long did Gulliver stay in bed after the adventure of the monkey?

@ He stayed ill in bed for two weeks.

4- What happened to the monkey after its accident with Gulliver?

@ It was sent away from the palace.

5- What did the king ask Gulliver when Gulliver visited him?

@ He asked him what he would have done if a monkey had taken him in his country.

6- What was Gulliver's answer when the king asked him about monkeys?

@ He said there were no monkeys in his country.

7- What was Gulliver's opinion of monkeys if they were in his own country?

@ He said he wouldn't be afraid of them as they were so small and they wouldn't be a problem for him.

8- What did Gulliver tell the king about his country?

@ He told him many things about England: its government, weather, arts and education, kings and queens, the legal system and history.

9- What was The king's reaction on hearing about England ?

@ He was excited and took notes while Gulliver was talking.

10- What did the king use the notes for? @ To ask Gulliver questions.

11- What did the king seem to think about England's legal system?

@ He thought that it was a weak legal system .

12- How was the king when Gulliver told him how to make weapons?

@ He looked horrible.

13- What did Gulliver realize after his talk with the king?

@ He felt that his country was small, unimportant and badly run.

14- Why did the king think that Gulliver was lucky? @ Because he escaped to a better place where people wanted to grow food rather than make war.

15- What was the difference did Gulliver discover between his country and Brobdingnag ?

@ Brobdingnag did not need weapons but they didn't have many books.

16- What would the carpenter make Gulliver ? Why?

@ He would make him a ladder to help him reach the top shelves.

17- How could Gulliver read a book?

@ He pushed the book against the wall, then use the ladder to climb up and down to read the lines. He used his two hands to turn the page.

18- Why could Gulliver read most of the books in the library easily?

@ Because the language of Brobdingnag doesn't have many words.

19- What did Gulliver learn from reading the books of Brobdingnag?
@ He learned a lot about the country's ideas and beliefs.
20- What else did he learn from books?
@ He learned about the music of Brobdingnag.
21- What did the king invite Gulliver to hear?
@ He invited him to hear a concert.
22- How was the music when Gulliver heard it at first?
@ It sounded like thunder.

23- What was Gulliver's problem during the concert?
@ The loud sound of music sounded like thunder.
24- When was this problem solved?
@ When they put his box in the far room and the doors and windows were closed.
25- How long had Gulliver been staying in Brobdingnag when he began to think about his own country ? @ For two years.
26- What was Gulliver thinking of after two years?
@ He was thinking of returning to his family and country.
27- What was the king's reaction about Gulliver's returning to his country?
@ He told Gulliver that he would like to help him.
28- What would the king do help Gulliver return to his family and country?
@ He would ask his soldiers if they found a ship like Gulliver's to bring it to the capital. So he would find people like him to live with him in the palace.
29- Did Gulliver like the idea of getting more people like him in the palace?
@ No, he didn't like this.
30- What did Gulliver ask one day from Glumdalclitch ?
@ He asked her to go to the beach to get some fresh air.
31- Who took Gulliver to the beach?
@ A young servant boy took him in the wooden box.
32- Why did Gulliver sleep? @ Because he felt tired of the sea air.
33- Why did the young boy leave Gulliver ?
@ He went to look for birds' eggs on the beach.
34- Why did Gulliver suddenly wake up?
@ He was waken up by a noise of something lifting up his box high into the air.
35- What did Gulliver see when he looked to the window?
@ He saw only clouds.
36- What picked up Gulliver's box?
@ A huge sea bird had picked up the box and carried it off in its feet.
37- What did the bird do? @ It left the box and flew away in the clear sky.
38- What did Gulliver think the bird was going to do?
@ He thought it would drop him onto a hard rock as a shell to eat him.

39- What happened after that?
@ The bird dropped the box and Gulliver began to fall down very quickly.
40- What happened to the box when it began to fall?
@ After few seconds, it stopped falling but it wasn't broken.
41- How did Gulliver know that the box fall in the sea?
@ Because the box moved slowly up and down.
42- Why did Gulliver thank the carpenter silently at that moment?
@ Because he made the box so well using strong wood and metal.

Homework

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why was Gulliver in danger of being flown off the palace roof?

2- What carried Gulliver to the top of the palace roof?

3- Who tried to rescue Gulliver off the palace roof? How did he do that?

4- How did the adventure of being on the palace roof affect Gulliver?

5- Were monkeys dangerous in England? Why?

6- Why did the King laugh when Gulliver said that monkeys were smaller than him?

7- How did the King show his interest in England?

8- What did Gulliver tell the King about England?

9- Why did the King take notes on what Gulliver said?

10- How did the King make use of the notes he took about Gulliver speech?

11- What was the King's opinion about England's legal system?

12- Did the King's criticism of England affect Gulliver? How?

13- Why was Gulliver against the King's idea of having other small people?

14- Where were Glumdalclitch and Gulliver travelling?

15- How far was one of the King's palaces, from the coast?

16- Why didn't Glumdalclitch go with Gulliver to the beach?

17- Who took Gulliver to the beach?

18- Why did the servant close the windows of the wooden box?

19- What lifted Gulliver up? How did he feel? Why?

20- What is known about birds carrying seashells high into the sky?

Chapter 8

Vocabulary

off coast	قريبا من الساحل	gently	برفق
float	يطفو	rescue	ينقذ
edges	جوانب	tie	يربط
drown	يغرق	raise	يرفع
die of	يموت بسبب	handkerchief	منديل
loops	حلقات	wooden	خشبى
attach	يربط	serious criminal	مجرم خطير
let air in	يسمح بدخول الهواء	punishment	عقوبة
repeat	يكرر	port	ميناء
jolt	هزة مفاجئة	plead	يلتمس / يتجادل
guess	يخمن	collect	يجمع
steps	درجات سلم / خطوات	sting	زنب النحلة
Englishman	رجل انجليزى	comb	مشط
terrible	سيئ / فظيع	dried leaf	ورقة شجر مجففة
situation	موقف	pins	دبابيس
joke	يمزح	needles	إبر
mad	مجنون	sword	سيف
breathe	يتنفس	ring	خاتم
amazement	ذهول	trousers	بنطال
hot drink	مشروب سخن	tooth	سِنة
valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة	deaf	أصم
souvenirs	هدايت تذكارية	hire	يستأجر
request	طلب	rude	وقح
fastened to	مثبت فى	bend down	ينحنى
damage	تلف / يدمر	otherwise	بدلاً من ذلك
Make ... angry	يُغضب	feed	يطعم
sink	يغرق	behave	يتصرف
awake	يستيقظ	promise	يعد
have a look	يُلقى نظرة	complete	مكتمل
crew	طاقم سفينة	end of	نهاية
row	يجدف	adventures	مغامرات

Text and Quotations

1. It was afternoon and I was in my box on the sea somewhere off the south coast of Brobdingnag. A sea bird had dropped the box in the sea and, although the box

had not broken, I did not know how long it could stay floating on the waves. The carpenter had done a good job, but I could see some water coming through the edges of the front door. I tried to stop the water by putting blankets across the edges.

لقد كان الوقت بعد الظهر وكنت فى صندوقى فوق مياه البحر فى مكان ما قريباً من الساحل الجنوبى لبروبدينجناج، قام طائر بحرى بالقاء الصندوق فى البحر وعلى الرغم من أن الصندوق لم يتحطم كنت لا أعلم الى أى مدى سوف يظل طافياً فوق الأمواج، لقد قام النجار بعمل جيد، لكننى كنت أرى بعض الماء يدخل من خلال جوانب الباب الأمامى، حاولت أن أمنع الماء بوضع بطاطين فى هذه الجوانب.

2. Next, I tried to lift the roof of my house, as the giants could do so easily. I thought I would be safer sitting on the top of the box where there was air, and where perhaps someone would see me. But it was too heavy and impossible for me to move. I had now been on the sea for four hours and knew that it would not be very long before I drowned or died of cold. The box had a door on one side, and windows on two other sides. On the fourth side, however, there were two metal loops which the carpenter had put on so that servants could carry the box easily by attaching them to a rope. I thought I heard a noise from this side of the box, then felt the box began to move faster through the sea. This gave me hope, although I could not think what was happening.

وبعد ذلك، حاولت أن أرفع سقف بيتى(الصندوق)، كما كان يفعل العمالقة بكل سهولة، كنت أظن أننى سأكون أكثر أماناً إذا جلست فوق قمة الصندوق حيث يوجد الهواء، وحيث ربما يرانى شخص ما، ولكنه كان ثقيلاً جداً وكان من المستحيل أن أحركه، كنت الآن فى البحر لمدة ساعتين وعرفت أن الوقت لن يطول كثيراً قبل أن أغرق أو أموت من البرد، كان للصندوق باباً فى أحد الجوانب، ونوافذ فى جانبين آخرين، وفى الجانب الرابع، بالرغم من هذا، كان هناك حلقتان معدنيتان وضعهما النجار لكى يتمكن الخدم من حمل الصندوق بسهولة عن طريق ربطهما بحبل، أظن أننى سمعت ضجة فى هذا الجانب من الصندوق، ثم شعرت أن الصندوق بدأ يتحرك بسرعة أكبر عبر البحر، هذا أعطانى أمل، على الرغم من أننى لم أستطع أن أُخمن ما كان يحدث.

3. The box also had a small hole in one side to let in air. I put my mouth close to this hole and shouted for help as loudly as I could, and I repeated this in all the many different languages that I could speak. Then I took my handkerchief and tied it to a pole, which I put through the hole and waved, so that if any boat were near, sailors would see it and realise I was inside the box. Nothing more happened for an hour, but the box continued to move through the sea until there was another soft jolt. The box had hit something hard, but on the side which had no windows, so I could not see what it was. I guessed that it was a rock, but found that the box was now moving even faster than before. A loud noise came from the roof, then I felt the box being lifted out of the sea. As it was lifted up, I put the pole with the handkerchief through the hole again and waved it, calling loudly, ***"If you can hear me, help! I'm inside!"*** I did not expect to hear a reply, but I was

extremely pleased when I heard a voice shout back, ***"Who's there?"***

وكان للصندوق أيضاً فتحة صغيرة فى أحد الجوانب لكى تسمح للهواء بالدخول، وضعت فمى بالقرب من هذه الفتحة وصحت من أجل المساعدة بأعلى صوت ممكن، وكررت هذا بكل اللغات المختلفة الكثيرة التى كنت أتحدثها، ثم أخذت منديلى وقمت بربطه فى قضيب حديد وأخرجته عبر الفتحة ولوحت به، لعل، اذا كان اى مركب قريباً، يراه البحارة ويدركون أننى بداخل الصندوق، لا شيئ آخر حدث لمدة ساعة، ولكن الصندوق أستمر فى التحرك عبر البحر حتى كان هناك هزة خفيفة أخرى، لقد أصطدم الصندوق بشيئ صلب ولكن من الجانب الذى ليس به نوافذ لذلك لم أستطع أن أرى ما هو، خمنت أنها صخرة، وكنى أكتشفت أن الصندوق أصبح الأن يتحرك أسرع من ذى قبل، جائت ضجة عالية من السقف، ثم شعرت أن الصندوق كان يُرفع خارج الماء، وبينما كان يتم رفع الصندوق لأعلى، وضعت القضيب بالمنديل عبر الفتحة مرة أخرى ولوحت به، وأن أنادى بصوت عالٍ: "إذا كنت تسمعنى، ساعدنى! أنا هنا فى الداخل!" لم أتوقع أن أسمع رد لكننى كنت مسروراً للغاية عندما سمعت صوتاً يرد: "من هناك؟".

4. Now I could hear steps on the roof and a voice called out, speaking in English, ***"If anyone's inside, speak clearly."*** ***"It's me! I'm an Englishman who's had a terrible adventure."*** I answered in an excited voice, ***"Please, I need to be rescued from a very dangerous situation."*** ***"Don't worry, you're safe now."*** the voice said. ***"Your box has been lifted out of the water and is now held by ropes behind our ship. I'll ask the ship's carpenter to come and make a hole in the roof to get you out."*** ***"That's not necessary."*** I called. ***"Just ask one of your sailors to pick up the box and carry it onto your ship, where you can lift up the roof."***

والآن استطيع أن اسمع خطوات على السطح وصوت ينادن كان يتحدث بالانجليزية، "لو أن أحداً بالداخل، فليتكلم بوضوح" أجبت بصوت يملئه الفرح: "إنه انا! رجل انجليزى حدثت له مغامرة فظيعة، من فضلك أحتاج أن ينقذنى أحد من موقف خطير جداً" قال الصوت: "لا تقلق، أنت فى أمان الآن، لقد تم رفع صندوقك من المياه وهو الآن مربوط بالحبال خلف سفينتنا، سوف أطلب من نجار السفينة أن يأتى ويصنع حفرة فى السقف لكى يُخرجك" ناديت قائلاً: "هذا ليس ضرورياً، فقط أطلب من أحد البحارة أن يلتقط الصندوق و يحمله على متن السفينة، حيث تستطيع هناك أن ترفع السقف".

5. I could hear people laughing: they thought I was joking, or perhaps they thought I was mad. I only realised later that these people were the same size as me and could not lift the enormous box. Soon the carpenter made a hole that was large enough to put down a ladder. I climbed out of the box at last, pleased to breathe fresh air, and they helped me onto their ship. As I walked, the sailors all looked at me in amazement and wanted to ask me a thousand questions. But I found that they all looked so small and strange that I did not want to answer. The captain of the ship, Mr Thomas Wilcocks, watched me as I arrived. He realised that I was very weak and probably ill. He took me inside and sat me down on a bed before giving me a hot drink.

كنت اسمع الناس يضحكون: لقد ظنوا أننى كنت أمزح، أو ربما ظنوا أننى كنت مجنوناً، أدركت

فقط فيما بعد أن هؤلاء الناس كانوا فى نفس حجمى، وانهم لم يستطيعوا أن يرفعوا الصندوق الضخم، سرعان ما صنع النجار حفررة كانت كبيرة بدرجة كافية لإنزال سُلم، خرجت من الصندوق أخيراً، كنت مسروراً أننى أتنفس هواءاً نقياً، وساعدونى أن أصعد الى سفينتهم، وبينما كنت أمشى، نظر جميع البحارة الي بذهول ودوا لو يسألونى ألف سؤال، لكننى أكتشفت أنهم جميعاً صغار جداً وغرباء جداً لدرجة أننى لم أرغب فى ان أجيبهم، شاهدنى كابتن السفينة، السيد توماس ويلكوكس، عندما وصلت، أدرك أننى كنت ضعيفاً جداً ومن المحتمل أن أكون مريضاً، أخذنى الى الداخل وأجلسنى على سرير قبل أن يعطينى مشروباً ساخناً.

6. ***"You're safe now, but you need to rest."*** he said kindly. ***"Thank you, yes, I'm very tired."*** I replied. But before I went to sleep, I said, ***"Listen. I have some important things in the box that I don't want to lose: valuable furniture and blankets and some other souvenirs."*** ***"I see."*** he said, with a strange look. The captain, too, perhaps thought I was mad, but agreed to my request and asked some sailors to find these things inside the box. I later found that the sailors took all my things out of the box, but because the furniture was fastened to the floor, they badly damaged the cupboard, table and chairs when they removed them, which made me very angry. When they had taken everything out, they cut the ropes and let the box fall back into the sea, and it quickly sank.

قال بعطف: "انت فى أمان الآن، لكنك تحتاج الى راحة" أجبته: "شكراً لك، نعم، أنا متعب جداً" ولكن قبل أن أذهب لأنام قلت: "استمع لى، لدى بعض الأشياء المهمة فى الصندوق لا أريد أن افقدها: أثاث قيم وبطاطين فاخرة وبعض الهدايا" فقال بنظرة غريبة: "أفهمك" ربما الكابتن أيضاً ظن أننى مجنوناً، ولكنه وافق على طلبى وطلب من بعض البحارة أن يجدوا هذه الأشياء التى بداخل الصندوق، أكتشفت فيما بعد أن البحارة قد أخرجوا جميع اشيائى من الصندوق ولكن لأن الأثاث كان مثبتا فى الأرضية، أتلفوا الدولاب والترابيزة والكراسى بشدة عندما أخذوهم من مكانهم، وهذا جعلنى غاضباً جداً، وعندما أخرجوا كل شيئ قطعوا الحبال وتركوا الصندوق يقع مرة أخرى فى البحر، وغرق بسرعة.

7. While I was asleep, I dreamt of Brobdingnag and all the adventures that had happened to me there. I woke up several hours later and I felt much better. It was about eight o'clock in the evening, and when the captain saw that I was awake, he ordered me some food, thinking I must be very hungry. He was a very kind man and spoke softly and gently to me as I ate. ***"It's lucky we found you."*** He said. ***"Earlier today at about twelve o'clock, I saw something in the sea far away. I thought it was a boat, and because our ship has become low on food, I decided to go towards it and ask if we could buy some sea biscuits. When I saw that it was not a sailing boat, I sent out some of my crew in a smaller boat to see what it was. They soon returned, and told me that they'd been frightened because they'd seen a big house floating on the sea. I laughed at them and decided I'd go in the small boat to have a look for myself."***

بينما كنت نائماً، حلمت ببروبدينجناج وكل المغامرات التى حدثت لى هناك، أستيقظت بعد عدة ساعات وشعرت بتحسن كبير، وعندما رأى الكابتن أننى أستيقظت، أمر لى ببعض الطعام، معتقداً أنه من المؤكد أننى جائع جداً، كان رجلاً طيباً جداً وكان يتكلم معى بهدوء ولطف بينما

كنت أتناول الطعام، قال لى: "من حسن الحظ أننا وجدناك، باكراً اليوم فى حوالى الثانية عشرة، رأيت شيئاً بعيداً فى البحر، أعتقدت أنه مركب، ولأن سفينتنا قل فيها الطعام، قررت أن أذهب ناحيته وأسأل لو كان من الممكن أن نشترى بعض بسكوت البحر، عندما رأيت أنه لم يكن قارب صيد، أرسلت بعض من طاقمى فى مركب أصغر ليروا ماذا كان هذا الشيئ، عادوا سريعاً وأخبرونى أنهم كانوا خائفين لأنهم رأوا بيت كبير طافياً فوق مياه البحر، سخرت منهم وقررت أننى سأذهب بالمركب الصغير لألقى نظرة بنفسى".

8. He stopped to drink, and then continued, ***"We took some rope and rowed back to look. When I saw the house myself: I couldn't believe it. We rowed all around your box and saw its windows and door, then we saw the loops on one side. The sea was calm, so we easily tied our ropes to the loops and I asked my men to row the box back to our ship." "So that explains my rescue."*** I said. ***"Yes. It took some time to pull the house to our ship, where I ordered the crew to tie on more strong ropes and to pull the box out of the sea. The sailors said this was very difficult and they'd only raised it a little when I saw your handkerchief appear through the hole in the side. We realized that someone or something was locked inside the box. So now, tell me: How did you find yourself in that strange wooden house?"***

توقف لكى يشرب ثم أكمل: "أخذنا بعض الحبال وجدفنا عائدين لكى نلقى نظرة، وعندما رأيت المنزل بنفسى: لم أصدق ذلك، جدفنا حول كل أنحاء الصندوق ورأينا نوافذه وبابه ثم رأينا الحلقات فى أحد الجوانب، كلن البحر هادئاً لذلك ربطنا حبالنا بسهولة فى الحلقات وطلبت من رجالى أن يجدفوا ليعودوا بالصندوق الى السفينة" قلت له: "إذاً هذا يفسر كيفية أنقاذى" "نعم، لقد أستغرقنا بعض الوقت لنسحب البيت الى سفينتنا، وهناك أمرت الطاقم أن يربطوا حبال أقوى لكى نسحب الصندوق خارج البحر، قال البحارة أن هذا كان صعباً جداً، وأنهم سوف فقط يرفعونه قليلاً عندما رأيت منديلك يظهر من خلال الحفرة التى كانت بأحد الجوانب، أدركنا أن شخص ما أو شيئ ما كان محبوساً داخل الصندوق، لذلك أخبرنى الآن: كيف وجدت نفسك داخل هذا البيت الخشبى الغريب؟"

---

9. I answered him with my own question: ***"Have you or any of your men seen any enormous birds in the area while I was sleeping?" "We've seen some birds, yes, but none of them seemed to be very big." "Perhaps because the birds were some distance away."*** I suggested. The captain said he did not understand what I meant. I then asked the captain how far we were from land. ***"We're about five hundred kilometres from any country."*** he said. ***"No, you must be wrong. I'd been in the box for only a few hours after it was dropped into the sea."*** I said. I could see that the captain thought I was very strange and very possibly mad. I tried to explain that if I had been strange before, I was now feeling much better after my food and a long sleep.

أجبته بسؤال من عندى: "هل رأيت أنت أو أى أحد من رجالك أى طيور ضخمة فى المنطقة بينما كنت نائماً؟" "رأينا بعض الطيور، نعم، لكن لا شيئ منهم كان يبدو ضخماً جداً" فأقترحت

قائلاً: "ربما لأن الطيور كانت على بعد مسافة ما" قال الكابتن أنه لا يفهم ما أقصده، ثم سألت الكابتن الى أى مسافة نحن بعيدين عن اليابسة، قال: "نحن على بعد حوالى 500 كيلومتراً من أى بلد" قلت: "لا، من المؤكد انك مخطئ فى هذا، لقد مكثت فى الصندوق لبضع ساعات فقط بعد أن سقط فى البحر" تمكنت أن أفهم أن الكابتن ظن أننى كنت غريباً جداً وأنه من المحتمل جداً أننى مجنون، حاولت أن أوضح أنه لو أننى كنت أبدو غريباً من قبل، فانا الآن أشعر بتحسن كبير بعد الطعام والنوم الطويل.

10. Now the captain looked very serious. ***"Look, you've told me some very strange things, things that I cannot believe. I think I know who you are. I think you're a criminal, who'd been put inside the box to be punished. If this is correct, I'll take you to the nearest port and leave you there."*** I pleaded with the captain to believe my story, which I told him he would soon hear. Then I explained all that had happened to me from the day I had left England to the moment he had found me in the box. The captain could see that I was very serious, and looked at me carefully. ***"It's possible that your story is true,"*** he said. ***"To be certain, however, I want you to show some of the things that you say you've kept in your box."***

الآن كان الكابتن يبدو جاداً جداً: "أنظر، لقد أخبرتنى بعض الأشياء الغريبة جداً، أشياء لا يمكننى تصديقها، أعتقد أننى أعرف من أنت، أعتقد أنك مجرم، وتم وضعك فى الصندوق كعقوبة لك، لو أن هذا صحيحاً، سآخذك الى أقرب ميناء وأتركك هناك" ألتمست من الكابتن أن يصدق قصتى، التى كما أخبرته سوف يسمعها حالاً، ثم أوضحت كل الذى حدث لى من أول يوم تركت فيه انجلترا حتى الحظة التى وجدنى فيها داخل الصندوق، أستطاع الكابتن أن يفهم أننى كنت جاداً جداً، ونظر الي بعناية، ثم قال: "من المحتمل أن قصتك حقيقية، لكن لكى أتأكد أريدك أن ترينى بعض الأشياء التى قلت أنك تحتفظ بها فى صندوقك".

11. The captain asked a sailor to bring the cupboard that they had taken from my box and I opened it using the key which was in my pocket. I then showed the captain all the souvenirs that I had collected from my time in Brobdingnag; a comb which I had made from a dried leaf, the sting of a bee which was the size of a knife, some pins and needles the size of small swords, and a ring which the Queen had given me and was large enough to wear on my head. I also showed him my trousers, which were made from the hair of a mouse. ***"Here, you can keep this ring as a present."*** I said, holding it out for him. ***"Thank you, but that won't be necessary."*** he said. The only thing the captain seemed to want was a tooth, which one of the Queen's servants had had removed by the palace surgeon. It was about thirty centimetres long and the captain could not believe it.

طلب الكابتن من أحد البحارة أن يحضر الدولاب الذى أخذوه من صندوقى وقمت أنا بفتحه مستخدماً المفتاح الذى كان فى جيبى، ثم عرضت أمام الكابتن كل الهدايا التذكارية التى جمعتها أثناء مدتى فى بروبدينجناج: مشط مصنوع من ورقة نبات مجففة، ذنب النحلة الذى كان فى حجم سكينة، بعض الدبابيس والإبر فى خجم السيوف الصغيرة، وخاتم أعطته الملكة لى وكان كبيراً بدرجة كافية أن أرتديه فى رأسى، عرضت له أيضاً بنطالى الذى تم صناعته من شعر فأر، قلت وأنا أحمل الخاتم له: "تفضل، يمكنك أن تحتفظ بهذا الخاتم كهدية" فقال: "شكراً لك،

ولكن هذا لن يكون ضرورياً" إن الشيئ الوحيد الذى يبدو أن الكابتن يريده كان سِنة، تم أزالتها من أحد خدم الملكة بواسطة طبيب القصر، لقد كانت حوالى ثلاثون سنتيمتر طولاً ولم يستطيع الكابتن أن يصدق هذا.

12. The captain then asked me why I spoke in such a loud voice. ***"Are the people of Brobdingnag a little deaf?"*** he asked. ***"No, they aren't deaf, but I was so small in their land that I had to speak loudly to be heard, just as a man has to shout from a window in a building to a person who's in the street two floors below."*** I then explained that, when I got onto his boat, everyone and everything looked so small that I found myself laughing. Although it was very kind of him to give me some food, the plates and cups that I ate and drank from seemed so little that I thought I would never be full. When my story was told, the captain smiled. ***"Well, now I understand why you behaved so strangely when you arrived on my ship. I believe your story. In fact, I'm very excited by it. You should tell the newspapers as soon as you return to England, so that the world will know about your amazing adventures."*** ***"I'll think about that."*** I said, but I was not sure this was a good idea.

ثم سألنى الكابتن لماذا أتكلم بصوت مرتفع جداً، وسألنى: "هل الناس فى بروبدينجناج يعنون من صمم خفيف" "لا، هم لم يكونوا أصماء، ولكننى كنت صغيراً جداً فى أرضهم لدرجة أننى كنت مضطراً أن أتكلم بصوت عالٍ لكى يسمعونى، بالضبط مثلما يضطر رجل أن يصيح من شباك فى مبنى ليصل صوته الى شخص فى الشارع تحته بطابقين" ثم أوضحت له أنه عندما صعدت على متن سفينته كان كل شخص وكل شيئ يبدو صغيراً جداً لدرجة أننى وجدت نفسى أضحك، وعلى الرغم من أنه كان عطف كبير منه أن يعطينى بعض الطعام، إلا أن الأطباق التى أكلت وشربت منها كانت تبدو صغيرة جداً لدرجة أننى ظننت أننى لن أشبع ابداً، عندما أنتهيت من سرد حكايتى، أبتسم الكابتن، وقال: "حسناً، الآن فهمت لماذا تصرفت أنت بغرابة كبيرة عندما وصلت على متن سفينتى، أنا اصدق قصتك، فى الحقيقة أنا مسرور جداً بها، يجب أن تخبرها للجرائد بمجرد أن تعود الى انجلترا، لكى يعرف العالم عن مغامراتك المذهلة"

13. The captain explained that his ship was on its way back from Vietnam and that we would soon reach the south of Africa. The boat stopped at a few ports on our journey to buy food and fresh water, but I did not want to leave the ship, as I felt safe there. Finally, on 3rd June 1706, we arrived back at the south coast of England, about nine months after I had left Brobdingnag. Before I left the ship, I told the captain that I wanted him to keep my things until I could pay him for all that he had done for me, but the captain refused and said that he had been happy to help. He even gave me some money so that I could hire a horse to ride back to my home. ***"You've been very kind to me."*** I said to him. ***"One day, you must visit me in my home. Until then, goodbye."***

أوضح الكابتن أن سفينته كانت فى طريق عودتها من فيتنام وأننا سوف نصل قريباً الى جنوب أفريقيا، لقد توقف القارب فى موانى عديدة فى رحلتنا لشراء الطعام والماء العذب، لكننى لم أريد أن أترك السفينة، فقد كنت أشعر بالأمان هناك، وأخيراً فى الثالث من يونيو عام 1706 وصلنا فى طريق عودتنا الى الساحل الجنوبى لإنجلترا، أخبرت الكابتن أننى أريده أن يحتفظ بأشيائى

حتى أستطيع أن أدفع له مقابل كل ما فعله من أجلى، لكن الكابتن رفض وقال أنه كان مسروراً لمساعدتى، حتى أنه أعطانى مالاً لكى أستأجر حصاناً لأعود عليه الى بيتى، قلت له: "لقد كنت طيباً جداً معى، ذات يوم، يجب عليك أن تزورنى فى بيتى، وحتى يحث هذا، الى اللقاء".

14. It was a long ride back to my home. I went down long roads and looked at all the people, the houses, the trees and the cows in the fields. They all looked so small that I began to think that I was back in Lilliput. Every time I saw a person in the road in front of me, I shouted at them, ***"Look out! Here I come!"*** because I was sure that I would step on them, like a giant. Many of the people thought I was very rude and did not realise I was trying to be kind. Eventually I arrived back at my house. A servant opened the door and I bent down to go inside, believing the door to be so small that I feared I would otherwise hit my head.

لقد كانت العودة الى البيت على حصان تبدو طويلة، ذهبت أسفل الطرق الطولية ونظرت الى كل الناس والبيوت والاشجار والبقر التى فى الحقول، كلها كانت تبدو صغيرة جداً لدرجة أننى ظننت أننى عدت الى ليليبوت، ففى كل مرة أرى فيها شخص فى الطريق أمامى، أصيح فيه: "**أنتبه! ها أنا قادم!**" وذلك لأننى كنت متأكد أننى سوف أدهسهم مثل عملاق، ظن كثير من الناس أننى كنت وقحاً ولم يدركوا أننى كنت أحاول أن أكون طيباً، وأخيراً عدت الى بيتى، فتحت خادمة الباب وانحنيت لكى أدخل، معتقداً أن الباب كان صغيراً جداً لدرجة أننى خفت أنه ربما بدلاً من ذلك ستصطدم رأسى.

15. I was very happy to see my family again, although I told my wife that she had not been feeding my children enough because they were all too small. I found it difficult to look at them because I had only looked up to speak to the giants of Brobdingnag, and now I had to look down. Like the captain on the ship, Thomas Wilcocks, my wife thought that I was behaving very strangely and that perhaps I was mad after my long journey at sea. It took me a long time to see our world as it really is: a land where everything is the right size for me to live in.

كنت سعيداً جداً أن أرى عائلتى مرة أخرى، بالرغم من أننى أخبرت زوجتى أنها لم تكن تطعم أولادى بالدرجة الكافية لأنهم كانوا جميعاً صغاراً جداً، لقد وجدت انه من الصعب أن أنظر إليهم لأننى كنت فقط أنظر لأعلى لأتكلم مع العمالقة فى بروبدينجناج، والآن انا مضطر أن أنظر لأسفل، ومثل كابتن السفينة، توماس ويلكوكس، ظنت زوجتى أننى كنت أتصرف بغرابة كبيرة أو ربما أننى كنت مجنوناً بعد رحلتى الطويلة فى البحر، لقد أستغرقت وقتاً طويلاً لكى أرى عالمنا كما هو حقاً: أرض بها كل شيئ فى الحجم المناسب لى لكى أعيش فيه.

16. Now, however, my story is nearly told. I was back in England and happy to be with the family I loved. ***"Gulliver, you must promise me that you'll never go abroad again."*** my wife said to me. ***"Surely there's a job that can pay you enough money in this country?"*** I agreed that my adventures were now finally complete. This was the end of Gulliver's travels.

والأن، بالرغم من كل هذا، تم تقريباً سرد قصتى، لقد عدت الى انجلترا وكنت سعيداً أننى مع العائلة التى أحبها، قالت لى زوجتى: "جلفر، يجب أن تعدنى أنك لن تسافر مرة أخرى أبداً، بالتأكيد هناك وظيفة يمكنها أن توفر لك مال كافٍ فى هذه البلد؟" لقد وافقت أن مغامراتى أخيراً أكتملت الآن، وكانت هذه هى نهاية رحلات جلفر.

Questions with Model Answers

1- What dropped Gulliver's box in the sea? ⇨ It was a huge sea bird.

2- What did Gulliver see coming through the edges of the front door?

⇨ He saw some water .

3- How did he try to stop the water coming through the edges of the door?

⇨ He tried by putting blankets across the edges.

4- How did Gulliver think to be safer?

⇨ He wanted to lift the roof of the house to sit on the top of the box.

5- Why did He want to sit on the top of the box?

⇨ To get fresh air and perhaps someone would see him.

6- Why couldn't Gulliver lift the roof of the house?

⇨ Because it was too heavy .

7- How long had Gulliver been in the sea now and what would happen to him after a short time? ⇨ He had been in the sea for about four hours, he knew that he would drown or die of cold.

8- How many doors and windows did the box have?

⇨ It had one door on one side and two windows on two other sides.

9- Why did the box had two metal loops?

⇨ They were made so that the servants could carry the box.

10- What happened that gave Gulliver hope?

⇨ He felt that the box began to move faster in water.

11- Why did Gulliver put his mouth close to the hole?

⇨ To shout for help in different languages.

12- What did Gulliver do with the handkerchief?

⇨ He tied it to a pole and put it through the hole to wave.

13- Why did he wave with the handkerchief ?

⇨ So that a passing boat or sailors would see and save him.

14- Did anything happened soon after waving with the handkerchief?

⇨ No, Nothing more happened for an hour.

15- What happened when the box hit the rock? ⇨ It moved faster and faster.

16- What did Gulliver do when he felt the box was lifted up?

⇨ He waved again with the handkerchief.

17- What did Gulliver say when the box was lifted up?

⇨ He asked if the any person could hear and help him.

18- What didn't Gulliver expect? How did he feel then? Why?

⇨ He did not expect to hear any voice but he was pleased as he heard a person saying: " Who's there?"

19- What did Gulliver hear on the roof?

⇨ He heard steps and a voice speaking in English.

20- What did the voice say and what was Gulliver's answer?

⇨ The voice said if there was anyone inside and asked to speak clearly. Gulliver said he was an Englishman who had a terrible adventure.

21- What was Gulliver's request from the voice?

⇨ He asked the voice to rescue him from his dangerous situation.

22- What was the voice's answer? ⇨ He told him not to worry as his box was lifted from water and is held by ropes behind the ship.

23- Why couldn't the sailors carry the box?

⇨ As they were the same size as Gulliver and the box was enormous for them.

24- How did Gulliver get out of the box?

⇨ The carpenter made a hole and put a ladder so Gulliver climbed out of the box.

25- Why did not Gulliver want to answer the people's questions?

⇨ Because they looked so small and strange.

26- Who was the captain of the ship that saved Gulliver?

⇨ He was Mr. Thomas Wilcocks.

27- What did Mr. Thomas notice when he saw Gulliver? What did he do?

⇨ He noticed that Gulliver was weak and ill. He took him to bed and gave him a hot drink.

28- What did the captain tell Gulliver after rescuing him?

⇨ He told him that he was save and asked him to rest.

29- What important things didn't Gulliver want to lose?

⇨ They were valuable furniture, blankets and some souvenirs.

30- Why was the furniture badly damaged when the sailors took it out?

⇨ Because it was fastened to the floor and this made Gulliver very angry.

31- What happened to the box when they had taken everything from it?

⇨ The sailors cut the ropes and it sank quickly in water.

32- What happened while Gulliver was sleeping?

⇨ He dreamt of Brobdingnag and all his adventures there.

33- How was Mr. Thomas kind to Gulliver?

⇨ When he got up, he ordered him food and spoke to him softly and gently.

34- How was Gulliver lucky according to Captain Thomas?

⇨ He told him that they saw the box and thought it was a boat so they decided to go there to buy sea biscuits as they had almost run out of food.

35- What did the captain decide when they found that it was not a boat?

⇨ He sent some sailors in a small boat. When they told the captain it was a floating house, he laughed and decided to go and have a look himself.

36- How did they get the box?

⇨ When they saw the loops, they tied ropes and went back to the ship.

37- When did they realize that there was someone in the box?
➪ When Gulliver showed his handkerchief.
38- What did the captain accuse Gulliver of?
➪ He accused him of being a criminal who was put into the box as punishment.
39- What would the captain do with Gulliver if he were a criminal?
➪ He would take him to the nearest port and leave him there .
40- What did the captain ask Gulliver to show to prove his story was true?
➪ He wanted Gulliver to show him some of the things he kept in the box.
41- What did Gulliver show the captain?
➪ He showed him all souvenirs, a comb, a sting of a bee, some pins and needles, a ring by the queen, the trousers made from the hair of a mouse.
42- What present did Gulliver offer the captain?
➪ He offered him the ring given to him by the queen.
43- What was the captain's reply when Gulliver offered him the ring?
➪ He thanked him as it was not necessary, but he was interested in a tooth.
44- Why was the captain interested in the tooth?
➪ Because it was about thirty centimeters long .
45- Did the captain believe Gulliver's story?
➪ Yes, he believed it and understood why he behaved strangely.
46- What did the captain advise Gulliver to do concerning his story?
➪ He advised him to tell it to the newspapers in England so that the whole world could knew about it.
47- Where was the ship returning from? Why did it stopped at some ports?
➪ It was returning from Vietnam and it stopped for food and fresh water.
48- When did they finally reach England?
➪ On 3rd June 1706 after nine (9) months from leaving Brobdingnag.
49- Why did Gulliver want the captain to keep all his things?
➪ He asked him to keep things until he could pay for all that he had done for him.
50- What did the captain do when Gulliver wanted him to keep all his things?
➪ He refused and told him he had been happy to help him and gave Gulliver some money to hire a horse to go back home.
51- Why did Gulliver bend when he went inside his home?
➪ Because he thought the door was small and would hit his head.
52- What did Gulliver tell his wife?
➪ He told her that she hadn't been feeding the children enough as they looked too small.
53- What did his wife think of him?
➪ She thought he was behaving strangely.
54- What did His wife want his promise for?
➪ She asked him to promise her not to go abroad again and he agreed.

Homework

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How did Gulliver try to get help while he was in the box?
2- Why was Gulliver surprised when he heard a voice replying to his shout?
3- Why did the people on the ship laugh?
4- How could the carpenter rescue Gulliver from the box?
5- What was Thomas Wilcocks?
6- How kind was Thomas Wilcocks to Gulliver?
7- What valuable things did Gulliver have in the box?
8- What happened to the box when the sailors cut the ropes?
9- What did Gulliver dream about?
10- How did Gulliver feel after he had slept for several hours?
11- What did the captain do when Gulliver woke up?
12- Why did the ship move towards the box?
13- According to Mr. Thomas Wilcocks, how far was the ship from any country?
14- Why did the captain think that Gulliver was a criminal?
15- Why did the captain think Gulliver was put in the box?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

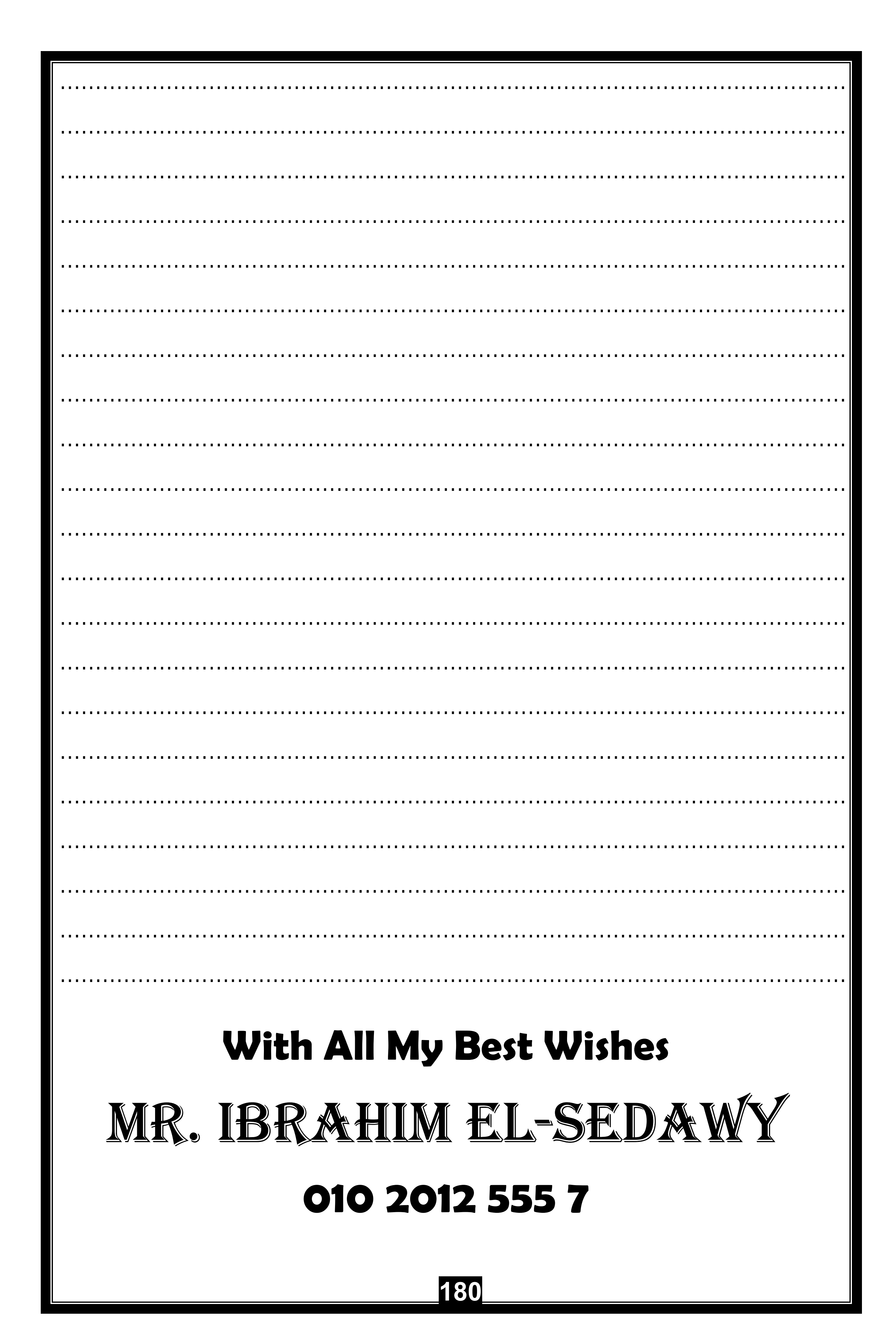
....

....

....

....

....



With All My Best Wishes

MR. IBRAHIM EL-SEDAWY

010 2012 555 7